Note:
This form of the Guest Operating System Installation Guide has been deprecated. The new version of the Guest Operating System Installation Guide contains only information and instructions applicable to installing guest operating systems.

For guest operating system support data, see the new Guest/Host OS VMware Compatibility Guide.

For VMware Tools information, see the applicable product documentation on the VMware Documentation Web site at http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/

For known issues, see the VMware Knowledge Base located at http://kb.vmware.com/

You can find the most up-to-date technical documentation on the VMware Web site at:
http://www.vmware.com/support/

The VMware Web site also provides the latest product updates.
If you have comments about this documentation, submit your feedback to:
docfeedback@vmware.com
## Contents

**About This Book**  27

**Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems**  37

- Latest Updates  37
- Supported Guest Operating Systems  37
- Supported and Unsupported Guest Operating Systems  40
  - Support for VMware ESX Server 3i Version 3.5 and Later and Version 4.x  41
  - Operating Systems That the Operating System Vendor No Longer Supports  41
  - Guests Last Supported on ESX 4.0  41
- VMware Tools Support  41
  - VMware Tools ISO File Format  41
  - VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages  42
  - Linux VMware Tools Support for ESXi 4.0  42
  - Installing VMware Tools in a Linux Guest Operating System  42
  - On Certain Linux Guest Operating Systems, the VMware Tools Process vmware-user Does Not Start Automatically  43
- SMP Support and Virtual Hardware  43
- Hot Add CPU, Hot Add Memory, and Hot Plug Devices  44
- 64-Bit Guest Operating Systems  50
  - Requirements for 64-Bit Guest Operating Systems  50
  - Running 64-Bit Guest Operating Systems  50
  - 64-Bit Linux Guests and Execute Disable Functionality  50
- General Guidelines for All VMware Products  50
  - VMware Experimental Feature Support Definition  51
  - Determining Memory Settings for a Virtual Machine  51
  - Sound Adapters on GSX and VMware Servers  52
  - Running a Guest Operating System  52
- Windows  53
  - 32-Bit Support  53
  - 64-Bit Support  53
  - General Installation Notes  53
    - Installation Steps  54
    - VMware Tools  54
- Windows Preinstallation Environment  55
  - 32-Bit Support  55
  - 64-Bit Support  55
  - General Installation Notes  55
    - Installation Steps  56
    - VMware Tools  56
- Known Issues  56
  - Using VMware Tools Drivers  56
- Windows Recovery Environment  58
  - 32-Bit Support  58
  - 64-Bit Support  58
  - General Installation Notes  58
  - VMware Tools  58
- Windows Server 2008  59
  - 32-Bit Support  59
64-Bit Support  60
General Installation Notes  61
    Installation Steps  62
    VMware Tools  62
Known Issues  62
    Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting  62
    Windows Server 2008 64-Bit Randomly Restarts with Microsoft Update 932596  62
    Opening VMware Tools Control Panel  62
    Warnings When Installing VMware Tools on Some VMware Products  63
Windows Vista  64
    32-Bit Support  64
    64-Bit Support  65
General Installation Notes  67
    Installation Steps  67
    VMware Tools  67
Known Issues  67
    Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting  67
    Opening VMware Tools Control Panel  67
    Warnings When Installing VMware Tools on Some VMware Products  68
    Network Adapter Change Needed for Some VMware Products  68
Windows Server 2003  69
    32-Bit Support  69
    64-Bit Support  71
General Installation Notes  72
    Installation Steps  73
    VMware Tools  73
    Sound Driver Needed for 64-Bit Guests  73
Known Issues  73
    Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting  73
    Enabling Enhanced vmxnet Adapter for Windows Server 2003  73
    vmxnet3 Network Adapter Displays Incorrect Link Speed  74
    Product Activation  74
    Display Hardware Acceleration  74
    Hibernation  74
    Checked (Debug) Build  74
    ESX Server and Support Microsoft Clustering Service with Windows Server 2003 SP1  74
    vlance Ethernet Adapter Fails to Start for Windows Server 2003 Virtual Machine in PAE Mode  75
    Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines  75
    ESX Server Virtual Machine Running Windows Might Fail to Power On if Not Rebooted After VMware Tools Installation  75
    On Intel Woodcrest-Based Hosts, Installing 64-Bit Windows 2003 Enterprise Server R2 in Virtual Machine Might Cause Virtual Machine to Crash  75
Windows XP  76
    32-Bit Support  76
    64-Bit Support  77
General Installation Notes  78
    Installation Steps  79
    VMware Tools  79
    Sound Driver Needed for 64-Bit Guests  79
Known Issues  79
    Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting  79
    vmxnet3 Network Adapter Displays Incorrect Link Speed  79
    Windows XP, Service Pack 3 Virtual Machines Fail to Transfer Data Through a Virtual Parallel Port  80
Phantom COM Ports Might Appear 95
Lack of Support for USB 2.0 Drivers 95
MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x 97
16-Bit Support for MS-DOS 6.22 97
32-Bit Support for MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1.x 97
General Installation Notes 97
MS-DOS 6.22 Installation Notes 97
Windows 3.1.x Installation Notes 98
Known Issues 98
Mouse Problems 98
VMware Tools 98
Asianux Server 3.0 99
32-Bit Support 99
64-Bit Support 99
General Installation Notes 100
Installation Steps 100
VMware Tools 100
Known Issues 101
Asianux Server 3.0 Service Pack 1 32-bit Guest isDisplayed Incorrectly in the Summary Tab of
VSphere Client After Installing VMware Tools 101
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall 101
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 101
Guest Screen Saver 101
CentOS 5.0 102
32-Bit Support 102
64-Bit Support 102
General Installation Notes 103
Installation Steps 103
VMware Tools 103
Known Issues 104
Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 104
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall 104
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 104
Guest Screen Saver 104
Migration to a Different Processor 105
CentOS 4.0 106
32-Bit Support 106
64-Bit Support 106
General Installation Notes 106
Installation Steps 107
VMware Tools 107
Known Issues 108
Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 108
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall 108
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 108
Migration to a Different Processor 108
Debian 5.0 109
32-Bit Support 109
64-Bit Support 109
General Installation Notes 109
Installation Steps 109
VMware Tools 109
Known Issues 110
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall  110
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  110
Migration to a Different Processor  110

Debian 4.0  111
32-Bit Support  111
64-Bit Support  111
General Installation Notes  111
  Installation Steps  112
  VMware Tools  112
Known Issues  112
  Xserver Fails to Start After Installing Debian 4.0 64-bit guest  112
  SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall  112
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  112
  Migration to a Different Processor  113

IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2  114
32-Bit Support  114
General Installation Notes  114
  Installation Steps  114
  Create Boot Disks  115
  VMware Tools  115
Known Issues  115
  Scroll Up Mouse Wheel Operation Using a VI Client Does Not Work in 32-bit IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2
  Guest  115
  Adding Disks to IBM OS/2 Warp Guests  115
  Installing CD-Writing Software on an IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 Guest Can Crash the System  115

IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0  116
32-Bit Support  116
General Installation Notes  116
  Installation Steps  116
  Create Boot Disks  117
  VMware Tools  117
Known Issues  117
  Scroll Up Operation With the Mouse Wheel Using a VI Client Does Not Work in 32-bit IBM OS/2
  Warp 4.0 Guest  117
  Adding Additional Disks to IBM OS/2 Warp Guests  117
  Installing CD-writing Software on an OS/2 Warp 4.0 Guest Can Crash the System  117

Mac OS X Server 10.5  118
32-Bit Support  118
64-Bit Support  118
General Installation Notes  118
  Installation Steps  118
  VMware Tools  119
Known Issues  120
  Use the Mac OS X Disk Utility to Increase the Disk Partition Size  120

Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4  121
32-Bit Support  121
64-Bit Support  121
General Installation Notes  121
  Installation Steps  121
  VMware Tools  122
Known Issues  122
  Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System  122
  Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System  122
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  123
Guest Screen Saver 123
Migration to a Different Processor 123

Mandriva Corporate Server 4 124
32-Bit Support 124
64-Bit Support 124
General Installation Notes 124
Installation Steps 124
VMware Tools 125
Known Issues 125
Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System 125
Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System 125
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 126
Guest Screen Saver 126
Migration to a Different Processor 126

Mandriva Linux 2008 127
32-Bit Support 127
64-Bit Support 127
General Installation Notes 127
Installation Steps 128
VMware Tools 128
Known Issues 129
Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System 129
Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System 129
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall 129
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 129
Guest Screen Saver 129
Migration to a Different Processor 129

Mandriva Linux 2007 130
32-Bit Support 130
64-Bit Support 130
General Installation Notes 130
Installation Steps 131
VMware Tools 131
Known Issues 131
Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System 131
Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System 132
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 132
Guest Screen Saver 132
Migration to a Different Processor 132

Mandriva Linux 2006 133
32-Bit Support 133
64-Bit Support 133
General Installation Notes 134
Installation Steps 134
VMware Tools 134
Known Issues 135
Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System 135
Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System 135
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 135
Guest Screen Saver 135
Migration to a Different Processor 135

Mandrake Linux 10.1 136
32-Bit Support 136
General Installation Notes 136
Installation Steps  137
VMware Tools  137
Known Issues   137
  Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System  137
  Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System  138
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  138
  Guest Screen Saver  138
  Migration to a Different Processor  138
  Display Issues  138
Mandrake Linux 10  139
32-Bit Support  139
General Installation Notes  139
  Installation Steps  140
  VMware Tools  140
Known Issues  140
  Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System  140
  Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System  141
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  141
  Guest Screen Saver  141
  Migration to a Different Processor  141
Mandrake Linux 9.2  142
32-Bit Support  142
General Installation Notes  142
  Installation Steps  143
  VMware Tools  143
Known Issues  144
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  144
  Guest Screen Saver  144
  Migration to a Different Processor  144
Mandrake Linux 9.1  146
32-Bit Support  146
General Installation Notes  146
  Installation Steps  146
  VMware Tools  147
Known Issues  148
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  148
  Guest Screen Saver  148
  Migration to a Different Processor  148
Mandrake Linux 9.0  149
32-Bit Support  149
General Installation Notes  149
  Installation Steps  150
  VMware Tools  150
Known Issues  151
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  151
  Guest Screen Saver  151
  Migration to a Different Processor  151
Mandrake Linux 8.2  152
32-Bit Support  152
General Installation Notes  152
  Installation Steps  152
  VMware Tools  153
Known Issues  154
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  154
Guest Screen Saver 154
Migration to a Different Processor 154

Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1 155
32-Bit Support 155
General Installation Notes 155
Installation Steps 155
VMware Tools 156
Setting Up a Symbolic Link to XFree86 156

Known Issues 156
Installation of Mandrake Linux 8.0 Hangs 156
Shutting Down Mandrake Linux 8.0 157
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 157
Guest Screen Saver 157
Migration to a Different Processor 157

Novell Linux Desktop 9 158
32-Bit Support 158
General Installation Notes 158
Installation Steps 159
VMware Tools 159

Known Issues 159
Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 159
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 159
Migration to a Different Processor 160

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 161
32-Bit Support 161
64-Bit Support 161
General Installation Notes 161
Installation Steps 161
VMware Tools 162

Known Issues 162
Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 162
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 163
Migration to a Different Processor 163

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 164
32-Bit Support 164
64-Bit Support 166
General Installation Notes 167
Installation Steps 168
VMware Tools 168

Known Issues 169
On Some Linux Guests with SELinux Enforcing Mode Turned On, Uninstalling VMware Tools
Makes the File System Read-Only 169
PAE Message During Installation 169
Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 169
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall 169
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 169
Migration to a Different Processor 169

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 171
32-Bit Support 171
64-Bit Support 174
General Installation Notes 176
Installation Steps 176
VMware Tools 177

Known Issues 177
Contents

PAE Message During Installation 177
Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines 178
Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 178
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 178
Guest Screen Saver 178
Migration to a Different Processor 178
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 2 and Update 3 Guests Displayed with Incorrect Operating System Type in Virtual Infrastructure Client 179
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 180
32-Bit Support 180
64-Bit Support 182
General Installation Notes 184
  Installation Steps 185
  VMware Tools 186
Known Issues 186
  Forcing the Installer to Read the Second Installation CD 186
  PAE Message During Installation 186
  Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines 187
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 187
  Guest Screen Saver 187
  Migration to a Different Processor 187
  Installation on Uniprocessor Virtual Machines with More than 4GB of Memory 187
  Message About “Tainted” Driver 188
  X Windows System Fails to Start in Virtual Machine If Default Depth for Display Is Set to 24 188
  Removing the Disk from a Virtual Machine with a RHEL3 Guest Operating System without Informing the Guest Causes the Virtual Machine to Fail 188
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 189
32-Bit Support 189
General Installation Notes 190
  Installation Steps 191
  VMware Tools 192
Known Issues 192
  Forcing the Installer to Read the Second Installation CD 192
  Mouse Does Not Function Properly 193
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 193
  Guest Screen Saver 193
  Migration to a Different Processor 193
  Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines 193
Red Hat Linux 9.0 194
32-Bit Support 194
General Installation Notes 194
  Installation Steps 195
  VMware Tools 195
Known Issues 196
  Forcing the Installer to Read the Second Installation CD 196
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 196
  Guest Screen Saver 196
  INIT Errors, Slow or Poor Performance 197
  Migration to a Different Processor 197
  Getting a DHCP Address in a Red Hat Linux 9.0 Virtual Machine 198
  Message About “Tainted” Driver 198
  Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines 198
Red Hat Linux 8.0 199
32-Bit Support 199
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Known Issues 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Screen Saver 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration to a Different Processor 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Java Desktop System 2 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Installation Notes 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation Steps 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware Tools 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known Issues 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Machine Might Hang During Guest Operating System Installation 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Screen Saver 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCO OpenServer 5.0 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Installation Notes 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation Steps 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Maintenance Pack 5 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware Tools 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known Issues 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The X Window System Stops Working 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouse Stops Working with Open Server 5.0.6 and 5.0.7 MP5 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Network Adapter and Protocol 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCO UnixWare 7 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Installation Notes 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation Steps 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install SCO UnixWare Maintenance Packs 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install and Configure SMP 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware Tools 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known Issues 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCO UnixWare Kernel Panics When Configuring Network 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-Bit Support 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Installation Notes 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation Steps 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware Tools 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known Issues 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do Not Use 4-Bit Color 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration to a Different Processor 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support 231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-Bit Support 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Installation Notes 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation Steps 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware Tools 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known Issues 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do Not Use 4-Bit Color 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration to a Different Processor 234</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11  235
  32-Bit Support  235
  64-Bit Support  235
  General Installation Notes  235
    Installation Steps  236
    VMware Tools  236
  Known Issues  236
    Do Not Use 4-Bit Color  236
    Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine  237
    Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  237
    Migration to a Different Processor  237
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10  238
  32-Bit Support  238
  64-Bit Support  239
  General Installation Notes  240
    Installation Steps  241
    VMware Tools  241
  Known Issues  242
    Do Not Use 4-Bit Color  242
    Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine  242
    Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  242
    Migration to a Different Processor  242
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9  243
  32-Bit Support  243
  64-Bit Support  244
  General Installation Notes  246
    Installation Steps  246
    VMware Tools  246
  Known Issues  247
    64-bit SLES 9 with SP 1 Spontaneously Resets on Intel EM64T Hardware  247
    Do Not Use 4-Bit Color  247
    Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine  247
    Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  247
    Guest Screen Saver  247
    SLES 9 SP3 Guest Experiences Monitor Panic in SMP Mode on Host with AMD Opteron Processor  248
    Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines  248
    Migration to a Different Processor  248
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8  249
  32-Bit Support  249
  General Installation Notes  249
    Installation Steps  250
    VMware Tools  250
  Known Issues  251
    Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines  251
    Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  251
    Guest Screen Saver  251
    Migration to a Different Processor  251
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7  252
  32-Bit Support  252
  General Installation Notes  252
    Installation Steps  253
    VMware Tools  253
  Known Issues  253
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System Installation Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuration Changes</strong> Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Migration to a Different Processor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUSE Linux 9.3</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-Bit Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Installation Notes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Installation Steps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VMware Tools</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Known Issues</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choosing Architecture When Installing SUSE Linux 9.3 on a 64-Bit Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do Not Use 4-Bit Color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Screen Saver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration to a Different Processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUSE Linux 9.2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-Bit Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Installation Notes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Installation Steps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VMware Tools</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Known Issues</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do Not Use 4-Bit Color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Screen Saver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration to a Different Processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUSE Linux 9.1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-Bit Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Installation Notes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Installation Steps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VMware Tools</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Known Issues</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Machine Might Hang during Guest Operating System Installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation from DVD Might Stop with an Error Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do Not Use 4-Bit Color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Screen Saver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration to a Different Processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUSE Linux 9.0</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Installation Notes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Installation Steps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VMware Tools</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before You Start the X Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Known Issues</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Machine Might Hang during Guest Operating System Installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation from DVD Might Stop with an Error Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do Not Use 4-Bit Color</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Screen Turns Black at the End of Turbolinux 10 Server Installation 299
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 299
Guest Screen Saver 299
Migration to a Different Processor 299
Problem Switching from X to VGA 300

Turbolinux 10 Desktop 301
32-Bit Support 301
General Installation Notes 301
Installation Steps 301
VMware Tools 301
Known Issues 302
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 302
Guest Screen Saver 302
Migration to a Different Processor 302

Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 303
32-Bit Support 303
General Installation Notes 303
Installation Steps 304
VMware Tools 304
Before You Start the X Server 304
Known Issues 304
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 304
Guest Screen Saver 305
Migration to a Different Processor 305

Turbolinux Workstation 8 306
32-Bit Support 306
General Installation Notes 306
Installation Steps 306
VMware Tools 307
Before You Start the X Server 307
Known Issues 307
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 307
Guest Screen Saver 307
Migration to a Different Processor 307

Turbolinux 7.0 309
32-Bit Support 309
General Installation Notes 309
Installation Steps 310
VMware Tools 310
Known Issues 310
Testing Scripts on Turbolinux 7.0 310
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 310
Guest Screen Saver 310
Migration to a Different Processor 310

Ubuntu 9.04 312
32-Bit Support 312
64-Bit Support 312
General Installation Notes 312
Installation Steps 313
VMware Tools 313
Known Issues 314
Ubuntu 9.04 Does Not Include vmmouse Driver 314
NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-Bit Ubuntu Guest 314
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall 314
Contents

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 314
Migration to a Different Processor 314

Ubuntu 8.10  316
32-Bit Support  316
64-Bit Support  316
General Installation Notes  317
  Installation Steps  317
  VMware Tools  317
Known Issues  318
  NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest  318
  SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall  318
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  318
  Migration to a Different Processor  318

Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 320
32-Bit Support  320
64-Bit Support  321
General Installation Notes  322
  Installation Steps  322
  VMware Tools  322
Known Issues  323
  NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest  323
  SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall  323
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  323
  Migration to a Different Processor  324

Ubuntu Linux 7.10 325
32-Bit Support  325
64-Bit Support  325
General Installation Notes  326
  Installation Steps  326
  VMware Tools  326
Known Issues  327
  NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest  327
  SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall  327
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  327
  Migration to a Different Processor  327

Ubuntu Linux 7.04 329
32-Bit Support  329
64-Bit Support  329
General Installation Notes  330
  Installation Steps  330
  VMware Tools  331
Known Issues  332
  NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest  332
  SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall  332
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  332
  Migration to a Different Processor  332

Ubuntu Linux 6.10 333
32-Bit Support  333
64-Bit Support  333
General Installation Notes  334
  Installation Steps  334
  VMware Tools  334
Known Issues  335
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior  335
Migration to a Different Processor 335
Ubuntu Linux 6.06 336
  32-Bit Support 336
  64-Bit Support 336
  General Installation Notes 337
  Installation Steps 337
  VMware Tools 337
Known Issues 338
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 338
  Migration to a Different Processor 338
Ubuntu Linux 5.10 339
  32-Bit Support 339
  64-Bit Support 339
  General Installation Notes 340
  Installation Steps 340
  VMware Tools 340
  VMware Tools and 64-bit Version of Ubuntu Linux 5.10 341
Known Issues 341
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 341
  Migration to a Different Processor 341
Ubuntu Linux 5.04 342
  32-Bit Support 342
  64-Bit Support 342
  General Installation Notes 342
  Installation Steps 343
  VMware Tools 343
Known Issues 344
  Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior 344
  Migration to a Different Processor 344
FreeBSD 7.1 345
  32-Bit Support 345
  64-Bit Support 345
  General Installation Notes 345
  Installation Steps 346
  VMware Tools 346
Known Issues 346
  FreeBSD 7.1 Guest Fails With Odd Number of Virtual CPUs 346
  Install and Reboot of 64-Bit FreeBSD 7.1 Guest Takes a Long Time With 4 Virtual CPUs 346
  FreeBSD 7.1 Guest With Large Amounts of Memory Can Stall After Splash Screen Appears 346
  Cannot Change the Screen Resolution in FreeBSD 7.1 Guests 346
  VMware Tools Custom Script for Suspend Power Event Does Not Work in FreeBSD 7.1 Guest 346
  Scroll Up Operation With the Mouse Wheel Using a VI-client Does Not Work in 32-bit FreeBSD 7.1 Guest 347
  /etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 347
  Sound 347
FreeBSD 7.0 348
  32-Bit Support 348
  64-Bit Support 348
  General Installation Notes 348
  Installation Steps 348
  VMware Tools 349
Known Issues 349
  /etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 349
  Sound 349
Contents

Known Issues 372

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 372

Sound 372

Guest Screen Saver 372

FreeBSD 4.11 373

32-Bit Support 373

General Installation Notes 373

Installation Steps 373

VMware Tools 373

Known Issues 373

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 373

Sound 374

Guest Screen Saver 374

FreeBSD 4.10 375

32-Bit Support 375

General Installation Notes 375

Installation Steps 375

VMware Tools 375

Known Issues 375

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 375

Sound 376

Guest Screen Saver 376

FreeBSD 4.9 377

32-Bit Support 377

General Installation Notes 377

Installation Steps 377

VMware Tools 377

Known Issues 377

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 377

Sound 378

Guest Screen Saver 378

FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 379

32-Bit Support 379

General Installation Notes 379

Installation Steps 379

VMware Tools 380

Known Issues 380

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 380

Sound 380

Guest Screen Saver 380

Migration to a Different Processor 380

FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 382

32-Bit Support 382

General Installation Notes 382

Installation Steps 382

VMware Tools 383

Known Issues 383

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests 383

Setting the Disk Geometry for a FreeBSD SCSI Virtual Disk 383

Sound 384

Guest Screen Saver 385

Migration to a Different Processor 385

NetWare 6.5 Server 386

32-Bit Support 386
Guest Operating System Installation Guide

General Installation Notes 387
Installation Steps 388
VMware Tools 389
Known Issues 389
Regaining Keyboard and Mouse Control After Reboot 389
Navigating in Text Mode 389
NetWare 6.5 Server SP3 and SP5 Installations Hang After Selection of Ethernet Driver on a Guest with Non-Passthrough Raw Device Mapping 389
NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation 390

NetWare 6.0 Server 391
32-Bit Support 391
General Installation Notes 392
Installation Steps 392
VMware Tools 393
Known Issues 394
Disconnecting VMware Tools ISO File 394
Installation Failure on First Try 394
Grabbing the Mouse Pointer 394
Cannot Browse File System with Arrow Keys 394
NetWare 6.0 Server SP5 Crashes When Stack Dump Exceeds the Valid Memory Limit 394
NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation 394

NetWare 5.1 Server 396
32-Bit Support 396
General Installation Notes 397
Installation Steps 397
VMware Tools 398
Known Issues 398
Updated LSI Logic SCSI Driver 398
Disconnecting VMware Tools ISO File 399
Pentium 4 Host Page Fault 399
Cannot Mount a CD-ROM as a Volume 399
Using More than One Virtual Network Adapter on the Same Network 399
Grabbing the Mouse Pointer 399
Cannot Browse File System with Arrow Keys 400
NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation 400

NetWare 4.2 Server 401
32-Bit Support 401
General Installation Notes 401
Creating and Configuring the NetWare Virtual Machine 401
Installation Steps 401
VMware Tools 403
Known Issues 403
NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation 403

Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms 404
32-Bit Support 404
Contents

64-Bit Support  405
General Installation Notes  407
   Memory Requirements for Solaris 10  407
   Installation Steps  407
   VMware Tools (ESX Server 3.x Only)  407
Known Issues  408
   Faults Reported on Solaris 10 and Solaris10 Update 1  408
   ESX Server 3.x Network Adapter Driver Support for 32-Bit and 64-Bit Solaris 10 Guests  408
   Using Solaris 10 in 32-Bit Mode on a 64-Bit Host  408
   Display Too Small After Installation  408
   PAE Message During Installation  408
   Performance Problems in ESX Server 3.x Virtual Machines with Four Virtual Processors on Hosts with Hyperthreading  409
   Solaris 10 Guests Might Become Unresponsive When Halted  409
   Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) and Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) Guests with Virtual SMP Might Hang When Powering On  409
   Solaris 10 Guest Cannot Eject ISO Image Mounted as CD-ROM  409
   64-Bit Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) and Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) Fail with Triple Fault on Intel Pentium M-Based Systems Merom, Woodcrest, and Conroe  409
Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition  410
   32-Bit Support  410
   General Installation Notes  411
      Installation Steps  411
      VMware Tools  412
Solaris 8 Operating System x86 Platform Edition  413
   32-Bit Support  413
   General Installation Notes  413
      Installation Steps  414
      Adding a SCSI Driver  414
      VMware Tools  415

Index  417
About This Book

The *Guest Operating System Installation Guide* provides users of VMware® ESX Server, VMware GSX Server, VMware Server, VMware ACE, VMware Workstation, and VMware Fusion™ information about installing guest operating systems in VMware virtual machines.

Revision History

This guide is revised with each newly supported guest operating system that requires installation instructions.

**Table 1. Revision History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20090716 | This version of the *Guest Operating System Installation Guide* has been deprecated. The new version of the *Guest Operating System Installation Guide* contains only information and instructions applicable to installing guest operating systems.  
- Guest operating system support data has been moved to the new Guest/Host OS VMware Compatibility Guide.  
- Known issues documented in this version of the guide can also be found in the Guest/Host OS VMware Compatibility Guide and in the VMware Knowledge Base.  
- VMware Tools information is located in the product documentation and the VMware Knowledge Base. |
| 20090714 | Added 32-bit and 64-bit Debian 4.0 r8 support on ESX 4.0.  
- Changed full support for SMP to experimental for all VMware products that support Ubuntu Linux 7.10 and Ubuntu Linux 7.04.  
- Modified LILO install instructions for SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10.  
| 20090709 | Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Ubuntu 9.0.4 on ESX 4.0.  
- Added known issue about vmmouse ungrab feature for Ubuntu 9.04 on ESX 4.0 and ESX 3.5 Update 4. |
| 20090702 | Added additional information about support for 32-bit and 64-bit Ubuntu 9.0.4 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
- Modified description of ESXi and ESX support.  
- Made miscellaneous edits. |
| 20090630 | Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Ubuntu 9.0.4 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
- Added support for PBMs on 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11, using a VMI kernel on ESX 3.5 Update 4. |
| 20090623 | Added support for Fusion 2.0.5, including new support for Ubuntu 9.04, 32-bit and 64-bit. |
Table 1. Revision History (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20090619   | ■ Added OSP support for 32-bit and 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
            | ■ Added OSP support for 32-bit and 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 8 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.                                           |
| 20090604   | ■ Added a notice to the cover page announcing the availability of the beta version of the online VMware Compatibility Guide: http://www.vmware.com/resources/compatibility/.  
            | The VMware Compatibility Guide will become the main source for host and operating system compatibility data for the most recent and most popular VMware products.  
<pre><code>        | ■ Made minor modifications and edits.                                                                                                       |
</code></pre>
<p>| 20090526   | ■ Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.8 on ESX 2.5.5 (32-bit only), 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0.           |
| 20090522   | ■ Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Solaris 10 Update 7 on ESX 4.0.                                                                         |
| 20090520   | ■ Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Solaris 10 Update 7 on ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, and 3.5 Update 4.                                                |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20090520     | Added ESX 4.0 release: New Support  
- Windows 7 Home Premium, Professional, Enterprise, and Ultimate, 32-bit and 64-bit. (experimental)  
- Windows 95 and Windows 95 Service Pack 1, and these OEM Service Releases: OSR1, OSR2, OSR2.1, and OSR2.5, 32-bit.  
- Windows 3.1, 32-bit.  
- MS-DOS 6.22, 16-bit.  
- Asianux 3.0 Server and Asianux 3.0 Server, Service Pack 1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- CentOS 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- Debian 5.0, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- Debian 4.0 r3, r4, r5, r6, and r7, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2, 32-bit.  
- IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0, 32-bit.  
- SCO OpenServer 5.0.6 and 5.0.7-MP5, 32-bit.  
- SCO UnixWare 7.1.1-MP5 and 7.1.4-MP4, 32-bit.  
- FreeBSD 6.4, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- FreeBSD 6.3, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- FreeBSD 7.0, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- FreeBSD 7.1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- Solaris 9, Update 1, Update 2, Update 3, Update 4, Update 5, Update 6, Update 7, and Update 8, 32-bit. (experimental).  
- Solaris 8, 06/00, 10/00, 01/01, 04/01, 07/01, 10/01, and 02/02, 32-bit (experimental).  
**Update Support**  
- Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
- Windows XP Embedded Service Pack 2, 32-bit.  
- CentOS 5.0 and 5.1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
**Additional Support**  
- Hot Add memory, Hot Add CPU, and Hot plug device support  
- Operating System Specific Packages (OSP) support – CentOS 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7, CentOS 5.0, 5.1, 5.2, and 5.3, and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11.  
- VMI support – SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11, and SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10  
- IPv6 support  
| 20090512     | Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Windows Vista Service Pack 2 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
- Added PBM support for ESX 3.0.3 on Ubuntu 8.04.2. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20090410 | Added VMware Fusion 2.0.4 release.  
Revised installation instructions for the CentOS 5.0 and CentOS 4.0 guest operating systems. |
| 20090406 | Added support for CentOS 5.3 on ESX 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 3.0.3, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Added OSP support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
Clarified OSP support for Ubuntu 8.04.2 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
Added support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 on Workstation 6.5.2. |
| 20090402 | Added VMware Fusion 2.0.3 release.  
Made minor corrections to information for the ACE 2.5.2 and VMware Server 2.0.1 releases. |
| 20090331 | Added VMware Workstation 6.5.2 release that includes new guest operating system support:  
Windows Vista, Service Pack 2, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Asianux Server 3.0, Service Pack 1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
OpenSUSE 11.1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Ubuntu 8.10 Desktop and Server, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Ubuntu 8.04.2 Desktop and Server, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Solaris 10, Update 6, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Added VMware ACE 2.5.2 release.  
Added VMware Server 2.0.1 release that includes this new guest support:  
Windows Vista, Service Pack 1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Windows XP, Service Pack 3, 32-bit.  
Asianux Server 3.0, Service Pack 1, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
CentOS 5.2, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
CentOS 4.7, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Added VMware Server 1.0.9 release.  
Added references to knowledge base article 1006224 that provides a solution for a blue screen that occurs using the LSI Logic SCSI driver on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2 and earlier, while installing these operating systems: Windows Server 2008, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003, and Windows XP. |
| 20090330 | Added support for ESX 3.5 Update 4 that includes this new guest support:  
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Windows Preinstallation 2.0, 32-bit and 64-bit.  
Added new OSP support for Ubuntu 8.04.2 and Ubuntu 8.10 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
Added prebuilt kernel modules (PBM) support for Ubuntu 8.04.2 on ESX 3.5 Update 4.  
Added reference to instructions for building kernel modules manually for VMware Tools on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server, and Ubuntu guests.  
Added reference about receiving an error message after installing VMware Tools on Ubuntu 7.04 and later. |
| 20090213 | Added the Fusion 2.0.2 release. New guest operating system support includes  
Ubuntu 8.10, 32-bit and 64-bit  
Mac OS X Server 10.5.6, 32-bit and 64-bit |
| 20090212 | Added support for 32-bit Ubuntu 8.04.2 JeOS on ESX 3.0.3 and 3.5 Update 3.  
Added support for both 32-bit and 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3 on ESX 3.5 Update 2.  
Added information about the vmware-user process for VMware Tools.  
Revised information about installing VMware Tools in Linux guests on VMware products. |
### Table 1. Revision History (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20090126   | - Added general information about VMware Tools.  
- Added support for Ubuntu 8.04.2 on ESX 3.0.3 and 3.5 Update 3.  
- Added instructions unique to installing VMware Tools on Ubuntu.  
- Added instructions about disabling IPv6 for Ubuntu 8.04 LTS and Ubuntu 7.10. |
| 20090120   | - Clarified support for 32-bit Windows Server 2003 on ESX Server.  
- Added support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3 on ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, and 3.5 Update 3.  
- Added known issue for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 running on ESX 3.5 Update 3.  
- Made minor corrections. |
| 20090112   | - Added VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages information to supported guests, including Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, and Ubuntu 8.04 LTS.  
- Reformatted support for Novell Open Enterprise Server on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, and NetWare 6.5 Server.  
- Clarified which version of MS-DOS is supported.  
- Revised index entries.  
- Incorporated minor edits. |
| 20081215   | - Added a new section that describes support for VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages.  
- Added support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, and 3.5 Update 3.  
- Added support information about Server Core functionality for Windows Server 2008. |
| 20081211   | - Added support for 32-bit NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 8 on ESX Server 2.5.5 for which VMware declared support on December 3, 2008.  
- Revised information about running 64-bit guest operating systems. |
| 20081203   | - Added support for 32-bit NetWare 6.5 Server, Service Pack 8 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, and 3.5 Update 3.  
- Added support for Novell Open Enterprise Server 2, Support Pack 1 with 32-bit and 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 2 and 32-bit NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 8 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, and 3.5 Update 3. |
| 20081201   | - Added the VMware Workstation 6.5.1 and ACE 2.5.1 releases. Revised support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 1 on Workstation and ACE. Changed all support to experimental for Open SUSE Linux 10.2 on Workstation and ACE.  
- Added information about creating a virtual machine for NetWare 6.5 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and 10.  
- Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Solaris 10, Update 6 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, and 3.5 Update 3.  
- Replaced the references to VMware knowledge base article 1420 that documents an issue about clocks running too slowly or too quickly with a reference to knowledge base article 1006427 that documents Linux timekeeping best practices. |
| 20081119   | - Added support for 64-bit Windows Essential Business Server 2008 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 3.  
- Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop on ESX Server.  
- Added a note about requiring Windows Internet Explorer 4.0 or greater to view VMware Tools online help in a Windows NT 4.0 guest. |
| 20081114   | - Added the Fusion 2.0.1 release. |
| 20081112   | - Added support for 64-bit Windows Small Business Server 2008 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 3.  
- Removed a note that restricted support for VMware Tools to Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) and Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) on ESX server 3.x. |
| 20081106   | - Added the ESX Server 3.5 Update 3 release that includes new support for the Ubuntu 8.04.1 guest operating system.  
- Added the VMware Workstation 5.5.9, ACE 1.0.8, and VMware Server 1.0.8 releases. |
Table 1. Revision History (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20081024 | ▪ Added a known issue about running Windows Server 2008 64-bit with Microsoft Update 932596,  
▪ Added a known issue about installing Turbolinux 10 Server on VMware Workstation,  
▪ Added a known issue about the vmxnet3 network adapter displaying the incorrect link speed on Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP,  
▪ Added a known issue for enabling the vmxnet adapter for Windows Server 2003 on ESX Server,  
▪ Added a known issue about Linux virtual machines that stop responding or stall when using the TSC clocksource. Guests include Asianux 3.0, CentOS 5.0, Mandriva Linux 2008, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, Open SUSE Linux 10.3, Open SUSE Linux 10.2, Ubuntu 8.04 LTS, Ubuntu Linux 7.10, and Ubuntu Linux 7.04,  
▪ Revised installation instructions for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and 10. Replaced press F2 for text mode with enter boot option textmode=1. |
| 20081008 | ▪ Added support for 32-bit and 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop with Workstation option on ESX Server 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, and 3.5 Update 2,  
▪ Revised instructions for disabling IPv6 for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, and CentOS 5.0,  
▪ Removed “Guest Screen Saver” sections from Windows guest operating systems because the information did not apply. |
| 20080925 | Added support for 32-bit CentOS 5.2 on ESX Server 3.0.4 and support for 64-bit CentOS 5.2 on ESX Server 3.0.3 and 3.5 U2. |
| 20080923 | Added VMware Workstation 6.5 and ACE 2.5 releases to supported guest operating systems,  
▪ Experimental guest operating system support on Workstation 6.5: Windows Preinstallation Environment (all versions); Windows Recovery Environment; Windows Server 2008 Standard; and Ubuntu LTS 8.04.1  
▪ Full guest operating system support on Workstation 6.5: Asianux 3.0; CentOS 5.0 to 5.2; Mandriva Linux 2008; Oracle Enterprise Linux 5.0 to 5.2; Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 7 (Workstation, Enterprise Server, and Advanced Server); Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 and 5.2 (Advanced Platform, Desktop, and Server); Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms, 10 5/08 (Update 5); SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, Support Pack 1, and Support Pack 2; SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Support Pack 2, and Ubuntu LTS 8.04  
▪ Full guest operating system support on ACE 2.5: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 7 (Workstation, Enterprise Server, and Advanced Server); Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 and 5.2 (Advanced Platform, Desktop, and Server); Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms, 10 5/08 (Update 5); SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, Support Pack 1, and Support Pack 2; SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Support Pack 2, and Ubuntu LTS 8.04 |
| 20080923 | Added VMware Server 2.0 release to supported guest operating systems. New VMware Server 2.0 support: Windows Server 2008 Enterprise and Standard; Windows Vista Business and Ultimate; Windows Server 2003 Web, Standard, and Enterprise Editions with Service Pack 2; and Windows XP Service Pack 2,  
▪ Mandriva Linux 2008 and Mandriva Linux 2007  
▪ Open SUSE Linux 10.2  
▪ Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1, and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 5  
▪ SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 1 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, Service Pack 4  
▪ Ubuntu 8.04 LTS, Ubuntu Linux 7.10, Ubuntu Linux 7.04, and Ubuntu Linux 6.10  
▪ Netware 6.5, Service Pack 6  
▪ Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms, Update 3 and Update 4 |
### Table 1. Revision History (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20080915 | - Added VMware Fusion 2.0 release to supported guest operating systems. New support:  
| |   - Mac OS X Server 10.5 (experimental support)  
| |   - Mandriva Linux 2008  
| |   - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.0 Advanced Server, Enterprise Server, and Workstation, Update 2; Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.0, Update 6; and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.0, Update 9  
| |   - SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, Service Pack 2 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 2  
| |   - Turbolinux Server 10  
| |   - Ubuntu 8.0.4, Ubuntu 8.04.1, Ubuntu Linux 7.10, and Ubuntu 7.04  
| |   - FreeBSD 7  
| |   - Netware 6.5, Support Pack 7  
| |   - Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms, (Update 5) |
| 20080828 | - Added support for 32-bit CentOS 5.2 on ESX Server 3.5, Update 2  
| |   - Added support for Workstation 5.5.8 and 6.0.5, ACE 1.0.7 and 2.0.5, and VMware Server 1.0.7.  
| |   - Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 32-bit and 64-bit  
| |   - Added support for Ubuntu 8.04 LTS on ESX Server 3.0.3 with required patch.  
| |   - Added support for Ubuntu 8.04.1 LTS on ESX Server 3.0.3 with required patch.  
| |   - Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms 32-bit and 64-bit  
| |   - Added required patch to support Solaris 10, Update 4 on ESX Server 3.0.3.  
| |   - Added support for Solaris 10, Update 5 with required patch on ESX Server 3.0.1.  
| |   - Added required patch to support Solaris 10, Update 5 on ESX Server 3.0.2 and 3.0.3. |
| 20080821 | Added support for BusLogic SCSI adapter for 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 6 and 7 on ESX Server 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, and 2.5.5. Added Service Pack 3 as one of the required service packs to run 32-bit Windows XP Professional on ESX Server. Removed VMI support mistakenly added to 64-bit Ubuntu Linux 7.10 on Workstation. |
| 20080808 | Added new ESX Server 3.0.3 release. |
| 20080801 | Documented known issue for Windows Server 2008 64-bit. Added support for Windows 2000 Professional, Service Pack 4 32-bit on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, and 3.5 Update 2. Added support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 7 32-bit on ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.5 Update 2 and for 64-bit on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.5 Update 2. |
| 20080725 | Added new ESX Server 3.5 Update 2 release. This release includes new support for these guests:  
| |   - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 2, including VMI on 32-bit.  
| |   - Ubuntu 8.04 LTS Server, Desktop, and JeOS editions.  
| |   - Add support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 2 on ESX 3.0.1 (requires Patch ESX-1005100) and ESX 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1005107). |
| 20080714 | Added support for Windows XP, Service Pack 3 on ESX 2.5.4 and 2.5.5. Added support for Solaris 10, Update 5 on ESX 3.0.2, 3.5, and 3.5 U1. |
| 20080530 | Added new VMware Fusion 1.1.3 release. |
| 20080529 | Added new releases for VMware Workstation 5.5.7 and 6.0.4, ACE 1.0.6 and 2.0.4, and VMware Server 1.0.6. Added support for Windows Vista Service Pack 1 on Workstation 6.0.4, ACE 2.0.4, Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger, and Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger. Modified Workstation support for Visual Studio and Eclipse integrated virtual debuggers. |
### Table 1. Revision History (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20080528</td>
<td>Added support for Windows XP Service Pack 3 on ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.5 and 3.5 Update 1. Revised support for Windows 2000 on Fusion. Added support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.5, and 3.5 Update 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20080508</td>
<td>Added support for Novell Open Enterprise Server 2 for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 Service Pack 1 on ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.5, and 3.5 U1. Added support for Novell Open Enterprise Server 2 for NetWare 6.5 Support Pack 7 on ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.5, and 3.5 U1. Added missing support for NetWare 6.5 Support Pack 7 on ESX Server 3.5 U1. Removed incorrectly listed support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, Service Pack 4 on ESX Server 3.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20080418</td>
<td>Added support for Windows Vista Service Pack 1 on ESX Server 3.5 and 3.5 Update 1. Added a note about an issue with screen resolution after installing VMware Tools on a Windows Vista Service Pack 1 virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20080410</td>
<td>Updated with new ESX Server 3.5 Update 1 release. Added information about Ubuntu 7.10, 64-Bit SMP guest operating system behavior on an Intel Host. Revised installation instructions for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5. Revisited existing and added new ESX Server support notes for several guests. Added support for Netware 6.5, Support Pack 7 on ESX Server 2.x and 3.x. Added virtual SMP support to Ubuntu 7.04 on ESX Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20080314</td>
<td>Updated with new Workstation 5.5.6, ACE 1.0.5, and VMware Server 1.0.5 releases. Updated with new Workstation 6.0.3 and ACE 2.0.3 releases. Added support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 on ESX Server 3.0.2. Modified information about using network and SCSI adapters with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 WS on ESX Server. Made miscellaneous edits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20080225</td>
<td>Listed ESX-1002431 Patch required to support SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 Service Pack 4 on ESX Server 3.0.2. Removed known issues that were not relevant to Windows Vista.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20080220</td>
<td>Removed incorrectly listed experimental support for Windows Vista on VMware ACE, VMware Server, GSX Server, and Workstation. Added known issue for choosing 32-bit or 64-bit architecture when installing SUSE Linux 9.3 guest on 64-bit host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20080124</td>
<td>Updated with new Fusion 1.1.1 release. Added note to Ubuntu 7.04 install instructions. Revised install instructions for Red Hat Linux 9.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20071221</td>
<td>Added support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 6 on ESX Server. Removed September Patch requirement, which was incorrectly listed, for Solaris 10 8/07 (Update 4) on ESX Server 3.0.1. Removed virtual SMP support, which was incorrectly listed, for 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 on ESX Server 3.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20071220</td>
<td>Added support statement for VMware ESX Server 3i version 3.5. Included additional support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Updates on ESX Server 3.0.1 and 3.0.2. Added support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, Service Pack 4 on ESX Server 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, and 3.0.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20071211</td>
<td>Added new ESX Server 3.5 release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20071126</td>
<td>Changed ESX Server 3.x network adapter driver support for 32-bit and 64-bit Solaris 10 guests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20071111</td>
<td>Updated with new Fusion 1.1 release. Revised statement for operating systems no longer supported by the operating system vendor. Added support for Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) on ESX 3.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20071019</td>
<td>Updated with new Workstation 6.0.2 and ACE 2.0.2 releases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20071015</td>
<td>Adds support for Solaris 10 8/07 (Update 4), 32- and 64-bit on ESX 3.0.1 and 3.0.2. Removes information about sound driver needed for Windows Server 2008 64-bit guests and modifies information about network adapter support for Windows Server 2008 on VMware Workstation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20070919</td>
<td>Adds new VMware Workstation 6.0.1 and ACE 2.0.1 releases. Adds new Workstation 5.5.5, ACE 1.0.4, and VMware Server 1.0.4 releases. Adds support for para virtualization on Workstation, running Ubuntu 7.0.4. Reverses order of entries in Revision History table. Revises file and directory names for disabling IPv6 when installing VMware Tools on Ubuntu Linux guest operating systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1. Revision History (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20070806</td>
<td>Adds new product, VMware Fusion 1.0 for Mac OSX, to supported guest operating systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20070731</td>
<td>Adds new VMware ESX Server 3.0.2 release to supported guest operating systems. Lists full support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.5 guest operating system. Clarifies support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5. Adds previously supported FreeBSD 5.5, which had not been included in this guide. Also includes minor corrections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20070327</td>
<td>Removes support for 32-bit Solaris 10, Update 3 on ESX Server 2.5.3 and 2.5.4 and 64-bit on ESX Server 3.0. Changes the date for Solaris 10 update 6/06. Adds statement about operating systems no longer supported by the vendor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20070314</td>
<td>Updates support for Service Pack 6 on Netware 6.5 on ESX 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 3.0, 3.0.1. Updates support for Intel VT on 32-bit Intel hosts running 64-bit guests. Adds LSI Logic adapter support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4. Updates support for Solaris 10 on ESX 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 3.0, and 3.0.1 (32-bit) with Update 3. Also updates support for Solaris 10 on ESX 3.0.1 (64-bit) with Update 3. Provides “Latest Updates” section in the Preface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20070202</td>
<td>Modified information about Upgrade Patch 1 support for ESX Server 2.5.4 for NetWare 6.5 Server and includes minor editorial changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20070126</td>
<td>Compared and merged data to the Guest Operating System Installation Guide from the VMware ESX Server 2.x and 3.x System Compatibility Guides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20070102</td>
<td>Provides information about Updates 3 and 4 for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 and Service Pack 3 for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 on ESX Server 3.0 and 3.0.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061206</td>
<td>Updates information about ESX Server 3.0.x support for Windows Vista, Windows XP, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061129-20061130</td>
<td>Modifies information about ESX Server 3.0.1 and VMware Server 1.x support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061116</td>
<td>Includes information for Workstation 5.5.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061109</td>
<td>Adds ESX Server 3.0.1 support for 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9; modifies information about ESX Server support for Microsoft Clustering Service with Windows Server 2003 SP1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061023</td>
<td>Includes information for Workstation 4.5.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061005</td>
<td>Includes information for ESX Server 2.5.4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061004</td>
<td>Minor changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20061002</td>
<td>Includes information for ESX Server 3.0.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20060816</td>
<td>Updates information for VMware Server 1.0.1 maintenance release.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20060810</td>
<td>Includes information for Workstation 5.5.2; updates information for ESX Server 2.5.3 and ESX Server 2.1.3 patch release.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1. Revision History (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20060727</td>
<td>Includes information for ESX Server 2.5.3 and ESX Server 2.1.3 patch release.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20060711</td>
<td>Includes information for VMware Server 1.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20060619-20060622</td>
<td>Minor changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20060614</td>
<td>Includes information for ESX Server 3.0 and VirtualCenter 2.0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20060502</td>
<td>Includes information for ESX Server 2.5.3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Intended Audience**

This book is intended for anyone interested in the operating systems supported by VMware products, their installation instructions, and known issues.

**Document Feedback**

VMware welcomes your suggestions for improving our documentation. If you have comments, send your feedback to docfeedback@vmware.com.

**Technical Support and Education Resources**

The following sections describe the technical support resources available to you. To access the current version of this book and other books, go to http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs.

**Online and Telephone Support**

To use online support to submit technical support requests, view your product and contract information, and register your products, go to http://www.vmware.com/support.

Customers with appropriate support contracts should use telephone support for the fastest response on priority 1 issues. Go to http://www.vmware.com/support/phone_support.html.

**Support Offerings**

To find out how VMware support offerings can help meet your business needs, go to http://www.vmware.com/support/services.

**VMware Professional Services**

VMware Education Services courses offer extensive hands-on labs, case study examples, and course materials designed to be used as on-the-job reference tools. Courses are available onsite, in the classroom, and live online. For onsite pilot programs and implementation best practices, VMware Consulting Services provides offerings to help you assess, plan, build, and manage your virtual environment. To access information about education classes, certification programs, and consulting services, go to http://www.vmware.com/services.
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

The following sections provide information about the newest changes and additions to the Guest Operating System Installation Guide, supported guests, and general notes on installation and support. Be sure to read the general guidelines as well as the information specific to your guest operating system.

- “Latest Updates” on page 37
- “Supported and Unsupported Guest Operating Systems” on page 40
- “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50

Latest Updates

Find the latest version of the guide on the VMware Web site at: http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs. Check the date on the cover page to determine if your copy of the guide is the most current. These are the changes or updates made to the Guest Operating System Installation Guide since it was last published.

- This form of the Guest Operating System Installation Guide has been deprecated. The new version of the Guest Operating System Installation Guide contains only information and instructions applicable to installing guest operating systems.
  - Guest operating system support data has been moved to the new Guest/Host OS VMware Compatibility Guide, located at http://www.vmware.com/resources/compatibility/search.php?deviceCategory=software
  - Known issues documented in this version of the guide can also be found in the Guest/Host OS VMware Compatibility Guide and in the VMware Knowledge Base located at http://kb.vmware.com/
  - VMware Tools information is located in the product documentation. See the VMware Documentation Web site at http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs and the VMware Knowledge Base. See knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340 for general information and instructions that will direct you to applicable VMware Tools information.

Supported Guest Operating Systems

The following table shows guest operating systems compatible with particular VMware products and provides links to installation instructions for each guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
### Table 1. Supported Guest Operating Systems, by VMware Product

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Workstation</th>
<th>VMware ACE</th>
<th>GSX Server</th>
<th>ESX Server</th>
<th>VMware Server</th>
<th>VMware Fusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows 7&quot; on page 53</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.5 U4-4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows Preinstallation Environment&quot; on page 55</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows Recovery Environment&quot; on page 58</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows Server 2008&quot; on page 59</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.0.1–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0.1–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.5 U2-4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows Vista&quot; on page 64</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.1</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows Server 2003&quot; on page 69</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows XP&quot; on page 76</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows 2000&quot; on page 82</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows NT 4.0&quot; on page 86</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows Me&quot; on page 89</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows 98&quot; on page 91</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Windows 95&quot; on page 93</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x&quot; on page 97</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Asianux Server 3.0&quot; on page 99</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.0.3–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>2.0.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;CentOS 4.0&quot; on page 106</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;CentOS 5.0&quot; on page 102</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.0.3–4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Debian 5.0&quot; on page 109</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Debian 4.0&quot; on page 111</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2&quot; on page 114</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0&quot; on page 116</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mac OS X Server 10.5&quot; on page 118</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4&quot; on page 121</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandriva Corporate Server 4&quot; on page 124</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.5.3–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandriva Linux 2008&quot; on page 127</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandriva Linux 2007&quot; on page 130</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.5.3–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandriva Linux 2006&quot; on page 133</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandrake Linux 10.1&quot; on page 136</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.2–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandrake Linux 10&quot; on page 139</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.2–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandrake Linux 9.2&quot; on page 142</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandrake Linux 9.1&quot; on page 146</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.1–3.2.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandrake Linux 9.0&quot; on page 149</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandrake Linux 8.2&quot; on page 152</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1&quot; on page 155</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Novell Linux Desktop 9&quot; on page 158</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Oracle Enterprise Linux 5&quot; on page 161</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5&quot; on page 164</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0.2–4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4&quot; on page 171</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0.1–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.2–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.5.2–4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3&quot; on page 180</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.5–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0.1–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0.1–4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1&quot; on page 189</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–4.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1. Supported Guest Operating Systems, by VMware Product (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Workstation</th>
<th>VMware ACE</th>
<th>GSX Server</th>
<th>ESX Server</th>
<th>VMware Server</th>
<th>VMware Fusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Red Hat Linux 9.0” on page 194</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Red Hat Linux 8.0” on page 199</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Red Hat Linux 7.3” on page 203</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Red Hat Linux 7.2” on page 207</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Red Hat Linux 7.1” on page 211</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Red Hat Linux 7.0” on page 214</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Red Hat Linux 6.2” on page 217</td>
<td>6.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Sun Java Desktop System 2” on page 220</td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 10.1” on page 264</td>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>3.5–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SCO UnixWare 7” on page 226</td>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11” on page 228</td>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11” on page 235</td>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Open SUSE Linux 11.1” on page 255</td>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Open SUSE Linux 10.3” on page 258</td>
<td>6.0.1–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Open SUSE Linux 10.2” on page 261</td>
<td>6.0.1–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 10.1” on page 264</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 10” on page 267</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 9.3” on page 270</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 9.2” on page 274</td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 9.1” on page 278</td>
<td>4.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 9.0” on page 282</td>
<td>4.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 8.2” on page 285</td>
<td>4.0.1–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.5</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 8.1” on page 289</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 8.0” on page 292</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUSE Linux 7.3” on page 295</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Turbolinux 10 Server” on page 298</td>
<td>6.0.3–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Turbolinux 10 Desktop” on page 301</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8” on page 303</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Turbolinux Workstation 8” on page 306</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Turbolinux 7.0” on page 309</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Ubuntu 9.04” on page 312</td>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>3.5 U4–4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Ubuntu 8.10” on page 316</td>
<td>6.5.2</td>
<td>3.5 U4–4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Ubuntu 8.04 LTS” on page 320</td>
<td>6.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.5–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.5 U2–4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1. Supported Guest Operating Systems, by VMware Product (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Workstation</th>
<th>VMware ACE</th>
<th>GSX Server</th>
<th>ESX Server</th>
<th>VMware Server</th>
<th>VMware Fusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ubuntu Linux 7.10&quot; on page 325</td>
<td>6.0.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.5–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.5 U1–4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ubuntu Linux 7.04&quot; on page 329</td>
<td>6.0.1–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0.1–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–2.4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.1</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ubuntu Linux 6.10&quot; on page 333</td>
<td>6.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.1</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ubuntu Linux 6.06&quot; on page 336</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ubuntu Linux 5.10&quot; on page 339</td>
<td>5.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ubuntu Linux 5.04&quot; on page 342</td>
<td>5.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 7.1&quot; on page 345</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 7.0&quot; on page 348</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>2.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 6.4&quot; on page 350</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 6.3&quot; on page 353</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 6.2&quot; on page 355</td>
<td>6.0.1–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0.1–2.5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 6.1&quot; on page 357</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 6.0&quot; on page 359</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 5.5&quot; on page 361</td>
<td>5.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 5.4&quot; on page 363</td>
<td>5.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 5.3&quot; on page 365</td>
<td>5.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 5.2&quot; on page 367</td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.1–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 5.1&quot; on page 369</td>
<td>5.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.2–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 5.0&quot; on page 371</td>
<td>4.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 4.11&quot; on page 373</td>
<td>2.5–2.5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 4.10&quot; on page 375</td>
<td>2.5–2.5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 4.9&quot; on page 377</td>
<td>3.2–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8&quot; on page 379</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3&quot; on page 382</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;NetWare 6.5 Server&quot; on page 386</td>
<td>4.5–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0.1–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.1</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;NetWare 6.0 Server&quot; on page 391</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0.1–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;NetWare 5.1 Server&quot; on page 396</td>
<td>4.0–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>2.0.1–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;NetWare 4.2 Server&quot; on page 401</td>
<td>5.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>2.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.0–3.2.1</td>
<td>1.0–1.0.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms&quot; on page 404</td>
<td>5.5.3–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.1–3.2.1</td>
<td>3.0–4.0</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.1</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition&quot; on page 410</td>
<td>4.5.2–6.5.2</td>
<td>1.0–2.5.2</td>
<td>3.1–3.2.1</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.0–2.0.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Solaris 8 Operating System x86 Platform Edition&quot; on page 413</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Supported and Unsupported Guest Operating Systems

If you are using VMware® Workstation 3.x, VMware GSX Server 2.x, VMware ESX Server 1.x or an earlier VMware product, see the user's manual that came with your product for instructions on installing guest operating systems supported by that product.

This guide covers Workstation 4.0, VMware ACE 1.0, GSX Server 3.0, ESX Server 2.0, VMware Server 1.0, VMware Fusion 1.0, and later products.
The section for each guest operating system lists which VMware products support the operating system in a virtual machine. Operating systems that are not included in this guide are not supported by the VMware products listed in this guide.

**Support for VMware ESX Server 3i Version 3.5 and Later and Version 4.x**

VMware ESX Server 3i version 3.5 and later and version 4.x and VMware ESX Server 3.5 and later and 4.x support the same guest operating systems. Please see the ESX Server column in Table 1, “Supported Guest Operating Systems, by VMware Product,” on page 38 for the list of operating systems.

**Operating Systems That the Operating System Vendor No Longer Supports**

For operating systems listed in this guide that the operating system vendor no longer supports, VMware may, at its sole discretion, provide support and fixes to VMware products to address problems that are exposed by running such operating systems on a VMware virtual machine. VMware is not responsible for resolving problems with, or providing support or fixes to, the operating system itself.

**Guests Last Supported on ESX 4.0**

Support for these guests will be deprecated with the next major release following ESX 4.0:

- Ubuntu 7.10
- Ubuntu 7.04

**VMware Tools Support**

VMware Tools is a suite of utilities that enhances the performance of the guest operating system and improves management of the virtual machine. Although the guest operating system can run without VMware Tools, you lose important functionality and convenience.

VMware Tools includes these components:

- VMware Tools service
- VMware device drivers
- VMware user process
- VMware Tools control panel

VMware Tools is provided in these formats:

- ISOs (contain tar and rpm files) – packaged with the product and are installed in a number of ways, depending upon the VMware product and the installed guest operating system.
- Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – downloaded and installed from the command line.

For a complete description and instructions for installing and upgrading VMware Tools, see one of the following manuals on the VMware Documentation Web site:

- VMware Workstation - *Workstation User’s Manual*
- VMware ESX – Basic System Administration guide
- VMware Server – *VMware Server User’s Guide*
- VMware Player – in-product online help

**VMware Tools ISO File Format**

VMware Tools provides a different ISO file for each type of supported guest operating system: Windows, Linux, Netware, Solaris, and FreeBSD. Installing VMware Tools from an ISO file varies, depending upon the VMware product, the release of the VMware product, and the type of guest operating system installed on the virtual machine.
VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages

VMware Tools are available as separate downloadable, light-weight packages that are specific to each supported Linux operating system and VMware product. Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) are designed to facilitate easy installation, upgrade, and management, using the native software management tools of the operating systems they support. OSPs are an alternative to the existing mechanism for installing VMware Tools.

For a complete set of instructions for downloading, installing, and upgrading VMware Tools OSPs, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at:


VMware products supported by VMware Tools OSPs:

- ESX 3.5 Update 2
- ESX 3.5 Update 3
- ESX 3.5 Update 4
- ESX 4.0

Guest operating systems supported by VMware Tools OSPs:

- CentOS 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7
- CentOS 5, 5.1, 5.2, and 5.3
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 1, Update 2, Update 3, Update 4, Update 5, Update 6, Update 7, and Update 8
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, Update 1, Update 2, and Update 3
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, Service Pack 1, Service Pack 2, Service Pack 3, and Service Pack 4
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 1, and Service Pack 2
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11
- Ubuntu 8.04, 8.04.1, and 8.04.2
- Ubuntu 8.10

Linux VMware Tools Support for ESXi 4.0

VMware Tools for Linux does not include prebuilt kernel modules (PBMs) for unsupported guests or the RPM packages for ESXi 4.0. Only a tar package is available for installing VMware Tools on ESXi 4.0 guests.

Visit the VMware Web site to download an alternative Linux Tools ISO image that contains VMware Tools for supported as well as a variety of older and unsupported Linux guest operating systems. See knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010714 for more details.

Alternatively, you can compile kernel modules for unsupported Linux guests using the install-vmware.pl script distributed with VMware Tools.

Installing VMware Tools in a Linux Guest Operating System

You can install VMware Tools in a Linux guest operating system while X is running on Workstation 5.0 and later, VMware Server, and ESX Server 3.0 and later. See the appropriate product documentation for details.

In all other VMware products, you must install VMware Tools from a text mode screen. You cannot install from a terminal in an X window session.
Some recent distributions of Linux are configured to run the X server when they boot and do not provide an easy way to stop the X server. However, you can switch to a different workspace that is still in text mode and install VMware Tools from that workspace.

To switch between Linux workspaces in a virtual machine, press Ctrl+Alt+spacebar, release the spacebar without releasing Ctrl and Alt, and then press the function key for the workspace you want to use—for example, F2. If you change your hot key combination to something other than Ctrl+Alt, use that new combination with the spacebar and the function key.

On Certain Linux Guest Operating Systems, the VMware Tools Process vmware-user Does Not Start Automatically

One of the executables used by VMware Tools in UNIX guests is vmware-user. This program implements the fit-guest-to-window feature and Unity mode, among other features. Normally, vmware-user is started automatically after you configure VMware Tools and then log out of the desktop environment and log back in.

However, in certain environments, you must start the vmware-user process manually. See knowledgebase article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008071](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008071) for details and solutions.

SMP Support and Virtual Hardware

Different virtual hardware versions support different levels of SMP. The ESX user interface lists the default level of SMP support for a particular guest, which is determined by the combination of the level of guest support and the level of support provided by the hardware version.

Hardware versions in combination with guest SMP support determine the level of SMP support. For example, if the guest supports 4-way and the hardware version supports up to eight, the highest level of SMP support will be 4-way. Support cannot exceed the level supported by the guest.

If there is no SMP value stated for a guest, then the implied value is 1.

Table 2 represents the possible maximum virtual SMP configuration values for each hardware release.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VMware Product</th>
<th>Hardware Version 7</th>
<th>Hardware Version 6</th>
<th>Hardware Version 4</th>
<th>Hardware Version 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESX 4.x</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESX 3.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESX 2.x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workstation 6.5.x</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 (exp)</td>
<td>2 (exp)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workstation 6.0.x</td>
<td>2 (exp)</td>
<td>2 (exp)</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workstation 5.5.x</td>
<td>2 (exp)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workstation 4.0.x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server 2.0.x</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server 1.0.x</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion 2.0.x</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion 1.0.x</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACE 2.x</td>
<td>2 (exp)</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACE 1.x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hot Add CPU, Hot Add Memory, and Hot Plug Devices

ESX 4.0 supports Hot Add CPU, Hot Add Memory, and Hot Plug Devices on specific guests.

Table 3. Hot Add support for Windows guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBS Standard 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003 SP1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBS Standard 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003 R2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003 SP2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Edition 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Vista</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business 64-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise 32-bit</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3. Hot Add support for Windows guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Basic 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Basic 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Premium 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Premium 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Vista Service Pack 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Basic 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Basic 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Premium 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Premium 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2008 SP1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard EBS Standard 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard EBS Premium 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard SBS Standard 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard SBS Premium 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2008 SP2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBS Standard 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3. Hot Add support for Windows guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EBS Premium 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBS Standard 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBS Premium 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2008 R2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datacenter Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Edition 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 4. Hot Add support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4. Hot Add support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Advanced Platform 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Server 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 5 Desktop with Workstation 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 5. Hot Add support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U2 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U2 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U2 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5. Hot Add support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U3 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U3 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U3 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U5 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U5 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U5 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U6 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U6 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U6 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Desktop U6 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 7</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U7 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U7 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U7 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Advanced Server U8 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Enterprise Server U8 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 4 Workstation U8 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6. Hot Add support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLED 9</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 9 SP4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 10</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 10 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 10 SP 1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 10 SP2 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 10 SP3 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 10 SP4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 11</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 11 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLED 11 SP 1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7. Hot Add support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLES 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 8 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 8 SP 1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 8 SP 2 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 8 SP 3 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 8 SP 4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 9 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 9 SP 1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 9 SP 2 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 9 SP 3 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 9 SP 4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 10 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 10 SP 1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 10 SP 2 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 10 SP 3 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 10 SP 4 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 11 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLES 11 SP 1 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8. Hot Add support for Ubuntu guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 5.04 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 5.10 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.06</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.06 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.06 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.10 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.10 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.04</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.04 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.04 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.10 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.10 JeOS 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.10 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 64-Bit Guest Operating Systems

### Requirements for 64-Bit Guest Operating Systems

To install and run a 64-bit guest operating system, you must have a supported CPU in the host computer and you must be running a VMware product that supports 64-bit guests. For details, see the documentation for your VMware product.

### Running 64-Bit Guest Operating Systems

You can run 64-bit guests on supported 64-bit hardware (Intel or AMD) running either 32-bit or 64-bit host operating systems.

For 64-bit Intel hardware with VT support, running either 32-bit or 64-bit host operating systems, you must enable VT in the host machine BIOS.

**NOTE** For more information about hardware and firmware requirements for 64-bit guest operating systems, refer to knowledge base article 1901 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1901](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1901).

### 64-Bit Linux Guests and Execute Disable Functionality

When running a 64-bit Linux guest operating system on EM64T hardware, make sure that you have Execute Disable functionality enabled in the host BIOS. This helps to ensure that the Linux guest operating system will run without interruption.

### General Guidelines for All VMware Products

Before starting to install a guest operating system, create a virtual machine and be sure that its devices are set up as you expect. For example, if you would like networking software to be installed when you install the guest operating system, be sure the virtual machine's Ethernet adapter is configured and enabled.

The tool or interface you use to configure the virtual machine depends on the VMware product you are using.

A new virtual machine is like a physical computer with a blank hard disk. Before you can use it, you must partition and format the virtual disk and install an operating system. The operating system's installation program might handle the partitioning and formatting steps for you.

---

### Table 8. Hot Add support for Ubuntu guest operating systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guest Operating System</th>
<th>Hot Add CPU</th>
<th>Hot Add Memory</th>
<th>Hot Plug Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04 JeOS 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.1 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.1 JeOS 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.1 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.2 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.2 JeOS 32-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04.2 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.10 Desktop 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.10 Server 32-bit and 64-bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE You should disable any screen saver that might be running on the host system before you start to install the guest operating system.

Installing a guest operating system inside a virtual machine is essentially the same as installing it on a physical computer.

The basic steps to install a typical operating system:

1. Start Workstation, VMware ACE Manager (release 1.x only) or a VMware Virtual Machine Console and connect to the virtual machine.

2. Insert the installation CD-ROM or floppy disk for your guest operating system into the CD-ROM or floppy drive being used by your virtual machine.
   - **ESX Server 2.x**: You must insert the installation CD-ROM or floppy disk in the drive on the server where the virtual machine is running. You cannot use the drives on your management workstation.
   - **GSX Server**: If your guest operating system requires a floppy disk, you must insert it in the drive on the server where the virtual machine is running. You cannot use the floppy drive on your management workstation.

3. Power on your virtual machine by clicking the Power On button.

4. Follow the instructions provided by the operating system vendor.

As with physical computers, a separate operating system license is required for each virtual machine you run.

NOTE Some Microsoft Windows OEM discs included with new computers are customized for those computers and include device drivers and other utilities specific to the hardware system. Even if you can install this Windows operating system on your physical computer, you might not be able to install it in a virtual machine. You might need to purchase a new copy of Windows to install in a virtual machine.

**VMware Experimental Feature Support Definition**

VMware includes certain experimental features in some of our product releases. These features are there for you to test and experiment with. We do not expect these features to be used in a production environment. However, if you do encounter any issues with an experimental feature, we are interested in any feedback you are willing to share. Please submit a support request through the normal access methods at [http://www.vmware.com/support](http://www.vmware.com/support). We cannot, however, commit to troubleshoot, provide workarounds, or provide fixes for these experimental features.

**Determining Memory Settings for a Virtual Machine**

When you configure the memory settings for a virtual machine, you should consult the documentation for the guest operating system you plan to run in that virtual machine. The user interface of your VMware product provides general guidelines for the amount of memory required, but if the interface and the operating system documentation do not agree, you should rely on the operating system documentation.
Sound Adapters on GSX and VMware Servers

Sound adapters by default are not installed in a virtual machine for GSX or VMware Servers. To add a sound adapter, use the virtual machine settings editor (VM > Settings) after you have installed the operating system. For instructions on configuring sound for a virtual machine on a GSX or VMware Server, see the corresponding server documentation.

Running a Guest Operating System

For information on running a guest operating system and using its features, see the documentation provided by the operating system vendor.
Windows 7

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows 7 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows 7:

- **VMware ESX Server** – experimental support only
  - Enterprise – ESX 4.0
  - Home Premium – ESX 4.0
  - Ultimate – ESX 4.0
  - Professional – ESX 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way support on ESX 4.0
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows 7 releases

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Windows 7:

- **VMware ESX Server** – experimental support only
  - Enterprise – ESX 4.0
  - Home Premium – ESX 4.0
  - Ultimate – ESX 4.0
  - Professional – ESX 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way support on ESX 4.0
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows 7 releases

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install Windows 7 Enterprise, Home Premium, Ultimate, or Professional in a virtual machine using the corresponding Windows 7 distribution CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Consider these requirements before installing Windows 7 in a virtual machine:

- Create and configure a new virtual machine.
- Be sure the virtual machine has at least 1GB or RAM or more for 32-bit guest, and 2GB or more of RAM for 640bit guest.
- For the 32-bit version of Windows 7, the hard drive for the virtual machine must be 24GB or larger.
- For the 64-bit version of Windows 7, the hard drive for the virtual machine must be 32GB or larger.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the Windows 7 CD or DVD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Windows 7.
3. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

SVGA Driver

For Windows 7, do not use the SVGA drivers included with VMware Tools. Use the standard SVGA driver instead.

To disable the SVGA drivers installed with VMware Tools

1) Choose the VMware Tools Custom Install and deselect the SVGA driver.
   
   Alternatively, remove the SVGA driver from the Device Manager after installing VMware Tools.
Windows Preinstallation Environment

This section contains product support for the Windows Preinstallation Environment operating system.

32-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows Preinstallation Environment:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 1.0 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 1.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 1.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2004 (1.5) – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2005 (1.6) – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.0 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.0 – ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.1 – ESX 4.0

64-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 64-bit Windows Preinstallation Environment:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 1.0 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 1.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 1.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2004 (1.5) – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2005 (1.6) – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.0 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.0 – ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment 2.1 – ESX 4.0

General Installation Notes
Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as the guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

Before creating a Windows Preinstallation 2.0 guest
- Create and configure a new virtual machine. Select Windows Vista for the guest operating system selection. A Windows PE selection is not available.

Before creating a Windows Preinstallation 2.1 guest
- Create and configure a new virtual machine. Select Windows Server 2008 for the guest operating system selection. A Windows PE selection is not available.
Download Windows AIK 1.1 (WAIK1.1) software (build from Windows Server 2008 kernel) from the Microsoft Web site:

Create a Windows PE 2.1 ISO image

To create a Windows PE 2.1 ISO image
2. Select Start > All Programs > Microsoft Windows AIK > Windows PE Tools Command Prompt to open the Windows PE Tools Command Prompt.
3. Type one of the following commands to create a Windows PE build environment for an x86 or amd64 machine in the winpe-x86 folder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32-bit</td>
<td>copype x86 C:\winpe-x86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit</td>
<td>copype amd64 C:\winpe-amd64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Create a Windows PE 2.1 bootable ISO image by entering the following command:
oscddmg -n -h -bc:\winpe-x86\etfsboot.com c:\winpe-x86\iso c:\winpe-x86\winpe-x86.iso

Installation Steps
1. Boot the virtual machine from a Windows PE 2.1 ISO image.
2. After the boot process completes, a command prompt appears.
   Use Windows PE to prepare your virtual machine to install a Windows operating system.

VMware Tools
There is no version of VMware Tools that supports Windows Preinstallation Environment.

Known Issues

Using VMware Tools Drivers
Although VMware Tools does not support Windows PE, you can take advantage of specific VMware Tools drivers, such as vmxnet2 (enhanced), vmxnet3 and pvscci by creating a customized ISO.
1. Install Windows 2008 and install WAIK 1.1 on a virtual machine.
2. Click Start > All Programs > Microsoft Windows AIK > Windows PE Tools Command Prompt to open the Windows PE Tools command prompt.
3. Type one of the following commands to create a Windows PE build environment in the WinPE folder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32 bit</td>
<td>copype x86 C:\winpe-x86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64 bit</td>
<td>copype amd64 C:\winpe-amd64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. From the Windows PE command prompt (c:\winpe-x86), type the following command to mount winpe.wim to the mount folder:
imagex /mountrw winpe.wim 1 mount
5 Install VMware Tools on Windows 2008, and copy the entire contents of the C:\Program Files\VMware\VMware Tools\Drivers\vmxnet, pvscsi, and vmxnet3 folders to the C:\Drivers folders on the virtual machine.

6 Type the following command at the Windows PE Tools command prompt to copy the vmxnet, vmxnet3 (enhanced) and pvsci drivers to winpe.wim:
   `peimg /inf=c:\drivers\*.inf c:\winpe-x86\mount\window`

7 Type the following command to save the changes to winpe.wim:
   `imagex /unmount c:\winpe-x86\mount /commit`

8 Type the following command to overwrite the boot.wim with the customized winpe.wim on the ISO:
   `xcopy c:\winpe-x86\winpe.wim c:\winpe-x86\iso\sources\boot.wim /y`

9 Type the following command to create the custom ISO image:
   `oscdimg -n -h -bc:\winpe-x86\etfsboot.com c:\winpe-x86\iso c:\winpe-x86\winpe-x86.iso`
Windows Recovery Environment

This section contains product support for the Windows Recovery Environment operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows Recovery Environment:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  
  Windows Recovery Environment – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Windows Recovery Environment:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  
  Windows Recovery Environment – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 for general installation instructions.

For instructions specific to the Windows Recovery Environment, see the accompanying operating system documentation.

VMware Tools

There is no version of VMware Tools that supports Windows Recovery Environment.
Windows Server 2008

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows Server 2008 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows Server 2008:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Datacenter – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Enterprise – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Standard – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Experimental Support
    - Standard – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5

- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  - Windows Server 2008 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  - Enterprise – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Standard – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Datacenter – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Enterprise – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Standard – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Web Server 2008 – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Update Support
    - Service Pack 2
      - Datacenter – ESX 3.5 U4
      - Enterprise – ESX 3.5 U4
      - Standard – ESX 3.5 U4
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows Server 2008 releases
    - pvscsi storage adapter – supports all Windows Server 2008 releases
Support Considerations

- The Server Core role available in the Standard, Datacenter, and Enterprise editions of Windows 2008 Server is supported by ESX. VMware Tools still apply, unless Server Core disables parts of the operating system that are specifically supported by VMware Tools. See the Microsoft Developer Network Web site for more information about Server Core:

- VMware Fusion – experimental support only
  Enterprise – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Standard – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Windows Server 2008:

- VMware Workstation
  Datacenter – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Enterprise – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Standard – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Small Business Server – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Experimental Support
  - Standard – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5

- VMware ACE – experimental support only
  Windows Server 2008 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  Enterprise – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Standard – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Small Business Server 2008, Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1
  Essential Business Server 2008, Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1

  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1
    - Small Business Server 2008 – VMware Server 2.0.1
    - Essential Business Server 2008 – VMware Server 2.0.1

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- VMware ESX Server
  Datacenter – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Enterprise – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Standard – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

Web Server 2008 – ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Small Business Server 2008 Standard – ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Small Business Server 2008 Premium – ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Essential Business Server 2008 Standard – ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Essential Business Server 2008 Premium – ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- Service Pack 2
  - Datacenter – ESX 3.5 U4
  - Enterprise – ESX 3.5 U4
  - Standard – ESX 3.5 U4

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- pvscsi storage adapter – supports all Windows Server 2008 releases
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows Server 2008 releases

Support Considerations
- The Server Core role available in the Standard, Datacenter, and Enterprise editions of Windows 2008 Server is supported by ESX. VMware Tools still apply, unless Server Core disables parts of the operating system that are specifically supported by VMware Tools. See the Microsoft Developer Network Web site for more information about Server Core: http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms723891(VS.85).aspx

Experimental Support
- R2 Datacenter – ESX 4.0
- R2 Enterprise – ESX 4.0
- R2 Standard – ESX 4.0
- R2 Small Business Server 2008 Standard – ESX 4.0
- R2 Small Business Server 2008 Premium – ESX 4.0
- R2 Essential Business Server 2008 Standard – ESX 4.0
- R2 Essential Business Server 2008 Premium – ESX 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on 4.0
- pvscsi storage adapter – supports all Windows Server 2008 R2 releases
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows Server 2008 R2 releases

- VMware Fusion – experimental support only
  - Enterprise – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes
Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.
You can install the Windows Server 2008 in a virtual machine using the Windows Server 2008 distribution CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Fulfill these prerequisites before installing Windows Server 2008 in a virtual machine:

- Create and configure a new virtual machine.
- Be sure the virtual machine has at least 512MB of RAM. The host computer must have more than 512MB of RAM to support this setting.
- For the 32-bit version of Windows Server 2008, the hard drive for the virtual machine must be 16GB or larger.
- For the 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008, the hard drive for the virtual machine must be 24GB or larger.

Consider these support issues before installing Windows Server 2008:

- If an Internet connection is not available while installing a 32-bit Windows Server 2008 guest, the driver for the multimedia audio controller will not be installed. The Windows Device Manager will indicate that the driver for the multimedia audio controller is missing. To install the required driver, configure an Internet connection, and run Windows Update on the Windows Server 2008 virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Windows Server 2008 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**Known Issues**

**Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting**

ESX 3.5 Update 2 and earlier: When this Windows guest is installed with LSI Logic Storport driver version 1.26.05 or later it crashes with a blue screen while booting on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2 and earlier. See knowledge base article 1006224 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006224 for more information.

**Windows Server 2008 64-Bit Randomly Restarts with Microsoft Update 932596**

If you install Microsoft Update 932596 on a computer running Windows Server 2008 64-bit, the computer randomly restarts and generates a Stop error. The Stop error might be 0x0000001E, 0x000000D1, or a different Stop error. See Microsoft KB article: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/950772 for details.

The Microsoft KB article links to the Hotfix Request page where you can find a download to fix this problem: http://support.microsoft.com/hotfix/KBHotfix.aspx?kbnum=950772&kbln=en-us

**NOTE** A Hotfix specifically for Windows Server 2008 is not listed on the Microsoft Hotfix Request page. However, the Hotfix for Windows Vista (Windows Vista All (Global) x64 sp2 Fix232207) will also fix this problem for Windows Server 2008.

**Opening VMware Tools Control Panel**

To open the VMware Tools control panel on a Windows Server 2008 guest, you need to be logged in as an administrator user.
Warnings When Installing VMware Tools on Some VMware Products

Windows Server 2008 uses a new method to install drivers. As a result, and depending upon which VMware product you are using, you may see warning messages at several stages during the installation of VMware Tools. Sometimes these messages are hidden. The driver installation appears to stop. However, if you press Alt+Tab, you can bring the warning message to the foreground. There are two types of messages.

- A message that indicates the driver is not Authenticode signed. When you see one of these messages, click Install Now to continue installing VMware Tools.
- A message that indicates the driver package is not compatible with Windows Server 2008. When you see one of these messages, click Cancel to continue installing VMware Tools.

You might also see a message that indicates you should restart the operating system before the VMware Tools installer has finished. Do not restart the guest operating system. Wait until the Installation Wizard Completed screen appears and click Finish. Restart the guest operating system when prompted.
Windows Vista

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows Vista operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows Vista:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Enterprise – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Business – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Home Basic – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Home Premium – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Ultimate – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5.2

- Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Enterprise, Business, Ultimate – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2. Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Enterprise, Business, Ultimate – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2. Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  - Enterprise – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Business – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Home Basic – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Home Premium – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Ultimate – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  - Business – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Ultimate – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1

- Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Enterprise – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Business – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

Home Basic – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Home Premium – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Ultimate – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support
- Service Pack 1 – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 2 – 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows Vista releases

Experimental Support
- Ultimate – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3

- VMware Fusion
  Enterprise – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Business – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Ultimate – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Home Basic – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Home Premium – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support
- Service Pack 1 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
- Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5.2
- Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5.2

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

- 64-Bit Support
  The following VMware products support 64-bit Windows Vista:

  - VMware Workstation
    Enterprise – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    Business – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    Home Basic – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    Home Premium – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    Ultimate – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

    Update Support
    - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5.2

    Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    - Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Enterprise, Business, Ultimate – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2. Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Enterprise – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2. Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  Enterprise – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Business – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Home Basic – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Home Premium – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Ultimate – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
    - Service Pack 1 – ACE 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  Ultimate – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Update Support
    - Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1,
  Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- VMware ESX Server
  Enterprise – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Business – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Home Basic – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Home Premium – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Ultimate – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Update Support
    - Service Pack 1 – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - Service Pack 2 – 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows Vista releases
  Experimental Support
    - Ultimate – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3

- VMware Fusion
  Enterprise – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Business – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Ultimate – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Home Basic – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Home Premium – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Update Support
    - Service Pack 1 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install Windows Vista Enterprise, Business, Home Basic, Home Premium, or Ultimate in a virtual machine using the corresponding Windows Vista distribution CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Fulfill these prerequisites before installing Windows Vista in a virtual machine:

- Create and configure a new virtual machine.
- Make sure the virtual machine has at least 512MB of RAM. The host computer must have more than 512MB of RAM to support this setting.
- For the 32-bit version of Windows Vista, the hard drive for the virtual machine must be 16GB or larger.
- For the 64-bit version of Windows Vista, the hard drive for the virtual machine must be 24GB or larger.

Consider these support issues before installing Windows Vista:

- If an Internet connection is not available while installing a 32-bit Windows Vista guest, the driver for the multimedia audio controller will not be installed. The Windows Device Manager will indicate that the driver for the multimedia audio controller is missing. To install the required driver, configure an Internet connection, and run Windows Update on the Windows Vista virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Windows Vista CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Windows Vista.
3. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

NOTE After installing VMware Tools on a Windows Vista Service Pack (SP1) virtual machine, the screen resolution does not change to 1024 by 768 pixels automatically. See knowledge base article 1004780 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1004780.

Known Issues

Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting

ESX 3.5 Update 2 and earlier: When this Windows guest is installed with LSI Logic Storport driver version 1.26.05 or later it crashes with a blue screen while booting on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2 and earlier. See knowledge base article 1006224 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006224 for more information.

Opening VMware Tools Control Panel

To open the VMware Tools control panel on a Windows Vista guest, you need to be logged in as an administrator user.
Warnings When Installing VMware Tools on Some VMware Products

Windows Vista uses a new method to install drivers. As a result, and depending upon which VMware product you are using, you may see warning messages at several stages during the installation of VMware Tools. Sometimes these messages are hidden. The driver installation appears to stop. However, if you press Alt+Tab, you can bring the warning message to the foreground. There are two types of messages.

- A message that indicates the driver is not Authenticode signed. When you see one of these messages, click Install Now to continue installing VMware Tools.
- A message that indicates the driver package is not compatible with Windows Vista. When you see one of these messages, click Cancel to continue installing VMware Tools.

You might also see a message that indicates you should restart the operating system before the VMware Tools installer has finished. Do not restart the guest operating system. Wait until the Installation Wizard Completed screen appears and click Finish. Restart the guest operating system when prompted.

Network Adapter Change Needed for Some VMware Products

The AMD Ethernet card driver is not included with Windows Vista. To use networking in a Windows Vista guest operating system on the VMware products specified in this section, you must change the network adapter. A driver for the vmxnet adapter is included in VMware Tools.

VMware ACE on a Windows host: Use a text editor such as Notepad to edit the configuration (.vmx) file for your Windows Vista virtual machine. Add the following line:

```
Ethernet[n].virtualDev = "vmxnet"
```

Replace [n] with the number of the Ethernet adapter. The first Ethernet adapter is number 0, so the line for that adapter is

```
Ethernet0.virtualDev = "vmxnet"
```

Include a line for each Ethernet adapter configured for the virtual machine. Then install VMware Tools. A driver for the vmxnet adapter is included in VMware Tools.

ESX Server 3.x: Install VMware Tools. A vmxnet driver for the network adapter is included in VMware Tools. Installing VMware Tools automatically switches the network adapter to vmxnet, and installs the vmxnet driver.

Alternatively, you can change the network adapter to e1000 (the Intel PRO/1000 MT Adapter) before installing Windows Vista. Use a text editor such as Notepad to edit the configuration (.vmx) file for your Windows Vista virtual machine. Add the following line:

```
Ethernet[n].virtualDev = "e1000"
```

Replace [n] with the number of the Ethernet adapter. The first Ethernet adapter is number 0, so the line for that adapter is

```
Ethernet0.virtualDev = "e1000"
```

Include a line for each Ethernet adapter configured for the virtual machine.
Windows Server 2003

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows Server 2003 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows Server 2003:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Web Edition – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Standard Edition – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Enterprise Edition – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Small Business Server 2003 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  **Update Support**
  
  Service Pack 1 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  R2 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  **Additional Support**
  
  SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  

- **VMware ACE**
  
  Web Edition – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Standard Edition – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Enterprise Edition – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Small Business Server 2003 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

  **Update Support**
  
  Service Pack 1 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  Web Edition – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  
  Standard Edition – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
Enterprise Edition – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
Small Business Server 2003 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

Update Support

- Service Pack 1 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

**VMware Server**

- Web Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Standard Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Enterprise Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**Small Business Server 2003**

- Web Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Standard Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Enterprise Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

Update Support

- Service Pack 1
  - Web Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Standard Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Enterprise Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- R2
  - Standard Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Enterprise Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- Service Pack 2
  - Standard Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Enterprise Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Web Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Small Business Server 2003 Standard – VMware Server 2.0.1
  - Small Business Server 2003 Premium – VMware Server 2.0.1

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

**VMware ESX Server**

- Web Edition – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Standard Edition – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Enterprise Edition – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Small Business Server 2003 Premium – ESX 2.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Small Business Server 2003 Standard – ESX 2.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Datacenter Edition – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support
- Service Pack 1 – ESX 2.1.2 (requires Upgrade Patch 4. See http://vmware.com/support/esx21/doc/esx-212-200506-patch.html), 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- R2 – ESX 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- pvscsi storage adapter – supports all Windows Server 2003 R2 releases
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows Server 2003 R2 releases

Support Considerations
- You need to manually configure the e1000 network adapter driver in ESX 3.0.2 to support Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition. Refer to knowledge base article 1003020 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003020.

VMware Fusion
Enterprise Edition – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support
- R2 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
- Service Pack 2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 64-bit Windows Server 2003:

VMware Workstation
- Standard x64 Edition – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Enterprise x64 Edition – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Update Support
- R2 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Additional Support
- Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Standard x64 Edition, Enterprise x64 Edition – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Standard x64 Edition, Enterprise x64 Edition – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
VMware ACE
- Standard x64 Edition – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- Enterprise x64 Edition – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

VMware Server
- Standard x64 Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
- Enterprise x64 Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

Update Support
- Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
- R2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
- Service Pack 2 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

VMware ESX Server
- Standard x64 Edition – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Enterprise x64 Edition – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Datacenter x64 Edition – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support
- R2
  - Standard x64 Edition – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Enterprise x64 Edition – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Datacenter x64 Edition – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 2 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- pvscsi storage adapter – supports all Windows Server 2003 R2 releases
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows Server 2003 R2 releases

Support Considerations
- You need to manually configure the e1000 network adapter driver in ESX 3.0.2 to support Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition. Refer to knowledge base article 1003020 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003020.

VMware Fusion
- Enterprise x64 Edition – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support
- R2 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes
Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

If an Internet connection is not available while installing a Windows Server 2003 guest, the driver for the multimedia audio controller will not be installed. The Windows Device Manager will indicate that the driver for the multimedia audio controller is missing. To install the required driver, configure an Internet connection, and run Windows Update on the Windows Server 2003 virtual machine.

If you are using the virtual LSI Logic SCSI adapter, Windows Server 2003 automatically installs the SCSI driver when you install the guest operating system. If you are using the virtual BusLogic SCSI adapter, you need a special SCSI driver available from the download section of the VMware Web site at www.vmware.com/download. Follow the instructions on the Web site to use the driver with a fresh installation of Windows Server 2003. If you have a virtual machine with a SCSI virtual disk and an earlier Windows guest operating system and want to upgrade it to Windows Server 2003, install the new SCSI driver before upgrading the operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the Windows Server 2003 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. If you are using the virtual BusLogic SCSI driver downloaded from the VMware Web site, you must take some special steps at this point in the installation process. As the Windows Server 2003 installer loads, press the F6 key. This allows you to select the additional SCSI driver required for installation. Press S to specify the additional driver. After you specify the SCSI driver, press Enter to continue with setup.
4. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

### Sound Driver Needed for 64-Bit Guests

**VMware Workstation 6.x and VMware Server**: If you want to use sound in a 64-bit Windows Server 2003 guest operating system, you must use the driver available on the VMware Web site at [www.vmware.com/download/ws/drivers_tools.html](http://www.vmware.com/download/ws/drivers_tools.html) under VMaudio Driver (experimental).

### Known Issues

#### Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting

**ESX 3.5 Update 2 and earlier**: When this Windows guest is installed with LSI Logic Storport driver version 1.26.05 or later it crashes with a blue screen while booting on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2 and earlier. See knowledge base article 1006224 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006224](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006224) for more information.

#### Enabling Enhanced vmxnet Adapter for Windows Server 2003


To enable the enhanced vmxnet network adapter option for these operating systems, follow the procedures in VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007195](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007195).
vmxnet3 Network Adapter Displays Incorrect Link Speed

The vmxnet3 network adapter (10 GBps) displays an incorrect link speed in this guest operating system, typically 1.4 GBps.

For more information, see the knowledge base article “A 10 GbE network adapter displays an incorrect link speed in Windows XP and Windows Server 2003” on the Microsoft Web site: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/931857/en-us

Product Activation

The Microsoft Windows Server 2003 product activation feature creates a numerical key based on the virtual hardware in the virtual machine where it is installed. Changes in the configuration of the virtual machine might require you to reactivate the operating system. There are some steps you can take to minimize the number of significant changes.

- Set the final memory size for your virtual machine before you activate Windows Server 2003. When you cross certain thresholds—approximately 32MB, 64MB, 128MB, 256MB, 512MB and 1GB—the product activation feature sees the changes as significant.

**NOTE** The size reported to the Windows product activation feature is slightly less than the actual amount configured for the virtual machine. For example, 128MB is interpreted as falling in the 64MB–127MB range.

- Install VMware Tools before you activate Windows Server 2003. When the SVGA driver in the VMware Tools package is installed, it activates features in the virtual graphics adapter that make it appear to Windows Server 2003 as a new graphics adapter.

- If you want to experiment with any other aspects of the virtual machine configuration, do so before activating Windows Server 2003. Keep in mind that typically you have 14 days for experimentation before you have to activate the operating system. (Your EULA might define a different period before activation is required.)

For more details on Windows Server 2003 product activation, see the Microsoft Web site.

Display Hardware Acceleration

Windows Server 2003 has display adapter hardware acceleration disabled by default. This slows down graphics performance and mouse responsiveness in the guest operating system.

To enable hardware acceleration in a Windows Server 2003 guest, open the Control Panel, and then open the Display Properties control panel. On the **Settings** tab, click **Advanced**. On the **Troubleshoot** tab, drag the **Hardware** acceleration slider all the way to **Full**.

Hibernation

Should you experience difficulties with the hibernation feature for this guest operating system, suspend the virtual machine instead.

Checked (Debug) Build

**VMware GSX Server:** In order to install and run a checked (debug) build of Windows Server 2003 in a virtual machine, you must first edit the virtual machine’s configuration file (.vmx). Add the following line:

```
uhci.forceHaltBit = TRUE
```

**ESX Server and Support Microsoft Clustering Service with Windows Server 2003 SP1**

For information about support of Microsoft Clustering Service (MSCS) with Windows 2003 SP1, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2021.
vlance Ethernet Adapter Fails to Start for Windows Server 2003 Virtual Machine in PAE Mode

VMware ESX Server, VMware Workstation: In a Windows Server 2003 virtual machine in PAE mode, the vlance Ethernet adapter fails to start. VMware recommends that you download and install the NDIS5 Driver for AMD PCnet Ethernet Adapter, version 4.5.1, from the AMD Web site at http://www.amd.com/us-en/ConnectivitySolutions/ProductInformation/0,,50_2330_6629_2452%5E2454%5E2486,00.html

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

ESX Server 3.x: Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.

ESX Server Virtual Machine Running Windows Might Fail to Power On if Not Rebooted After VMware Tools Installation

ESX Server 2.5.x: After you install VMware Tools on an ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machine that is running Microsoft Windows, the VMware Tools installer asks you to reboot the virtual machine. If you choose not to reboot at that time, and subsequently remove power from the virtual machine, either by using the button Power Off Virtual Machine in the remote console, or by shutting down the ESX Server, you might then be unable to power on the virtual machine again. When you attempt to do so, the virtual machine might fail to boot up, displaying the message STOP 0x0000007B: INACCESSIBLE_BOOT_DEVICE. To avoid this problem, after installing VMware Tools, be sure to reboot the virtual machine when the VMware Tools installer prompts you.

On Intel Woodcrest-Based Hosts, Installing 64-Bit Windows 2003 Enterprise Server R2 in Virtual Machine Might Cause Virtual Machine to Crash

ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, and 3.0.3: On ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, and 3.0.3 hosts running on Intel Woodcrest processors, installing 64-Bit Windows 2003 Enterprise Server R2 in a virtual machine might cause the virtual machine to crash to bluescreen with the stop code STOP: 0x00000109. Testing indicates that this problem occurs intermittently, in approximately 10 percent of installations.
Windows XP

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows XP operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows XP:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Professional – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Home Edition – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Update Support
  
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  - Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Professional – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Professional – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  Professional – VMware ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Home Edition – VMware ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

  Update Support
  
  - Service Pack 1 – VMware ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  - Service Pack 2 – VMware ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  Professional – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  
  Home Edition – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

  Update Support
  
  - Service Pack 1 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  
  - Service Pack 2 – GSX Server 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  
  Professional – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
Update Support
- Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Service Pack 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
- Service Pack 3 – VMware Server 2.0.1

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

VMware ESX Server
Professional, Service Pack 1, 2, or 3 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Embedded – ESX 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support
- Professional
  - Service Pack 1 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Service Pack 2 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Service Pack 3 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Embedded
  - Service Pack 2 – ESX 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows XP releases

VMware Fusion
Professional – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Home Edition – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support
- Service Pack 2 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
- Service Pack 3 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 64-bit Windows XP

VMware Workstation
Professional x64 Edition – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Additional Support
- Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Professional x64 Edition – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Professional x64 Edition – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  - Professional x64 Edition, Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Update Support
    - Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  - Professional x64 Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - Update Support
    - Service Pack 2 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Professional x64 Edition, Service Pack 2 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Update Support
    - Service Pack 2 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Windows XP releases

- **VMware Fusion**
  - Professional x64 Edition – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Update Support
    - Service Pack 2 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install Windows XP Home Edition or Professional in a virtual machine using the corresponding Windows XP distribution CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

**VMware Workstation, VMware ACE, GSX Server, ESX Server**: To use the virtual BusLogic SCSI adapter in a Windows XP virtual machine, you need a special SCSI driver available from the download section of the VMware Web site at www.vmware.com/download. Follow the instructions on the Web site to use the driver with a fresh installation of Windows XP.

**ESX**: You can also use the vmmscsi SCSI driver for the virtual BusLogic SCSI adapter provided on the floppy image that is included with the ESX software.

If you have a virtual machine with a SCSI virtual disk and a Windows 9x, Windows Me, Windows NT or Windows 2000 guest operating system and want to upgrade it to Windows XP, install the new SCSI driver before upgrading the operating system.
**GSX Server or ESX Server:** If you are using the virtual LSI Logic SCSI adapter, you must download the driver from the download center at the LSI Logic Web site. Go to [http://www.lsi.com/cm/DownloadSearch.do](http://www.lsi.com/cm/DownloadSearch.do) and download the LSI20320-R SCSI adapter driver for your guest operating system. For details on installing this driver, see the VMware ESX Server Administration Guide. The LSI Logic Web site also provides an *Installation Guide for the LSI Logic Fusion-MPT™ Driver: SYMMPI.SYS V1.xx.xx*, located (at the time of this Guest Operating System Installation Guide’s publication) at [www.lsi.com/files/support/ssp/fusionmpt/WinXP/symmpi_xp_12018.txt](http://www.lsi.com/files/support/ssp/fusionmpt/WinXP/symmpi_xp_12018.txt).

If you want to run Windows XP Home Edition or Professional in a virtual machine, be sure you have a full installation CD for the operating system.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing the guest operating system.
   - If you are using the virtual BusLogic SCSI driver downloaded from the VMware Web site or the LSI Logic SCSI driver downloaded from the LSI Logic Web site, you must take some special steps at this point in the installation process.
   - **ESX:** You can also use the vmscsi SCSI driver for the virtual BusLogic SCSI adapter provided on the floppy image that is included with the ESX software.
3. As the Windows XP installer loads, press the F6 key.
   - This allows you to select the additional SCSI driver required for installation.
4. Press S to specify the additional driver, and press Enter to continue with the setup.
5. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**Sound Driver Needed for 64-Bit Guests**

**VMware Workstation 5.5.x and VMware Server:** if you want to use sound in a 64-bit Windows XP Professional guest operating system, you must use the driver available on the VMware Web site at [www.vmware.com/download/ws/drivers_tools.html](http://www.vmware.com/download/ws/drivers_tools.html) under VMaudio Driver (experimental).

**Known Issues**

**Windows Guests Installed with LSI Logic Storport Driver 1.26.05 Crash while Booting**

**ESX 3.5 Update 2 and earlier:** When this Windows guest is installed with LSI Logic Storport driver version 1.26.05 or later it crashes with a blue screen while booting on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2 and earlier. See knowledge base article 1006224 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006224](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006224) for more information.

**vmxnet3 Network Adapter Displays Incorrect Link Speed**

The vmxnet3 network adapter (10 Gbps) displays an incorrect link speed in this guest operating system, typically 1.4 Gbps.
For more information, see the knowledge base article “A 10 GbE network adapter displays an incorrect link speed in Windows XP and Windows Server 2003” on the Microsoft Web site: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/931857/en-us

Windows XP, Service Pack 3 Virtual Machines Fail to Transfer Data Through a Virtual Parallel Port

VMware ESX 2.5.x: When a virtual parallel port is added to a virtual machine running Windows XP Service Pack 3, data transfer using the virtual parallel port might fail, with a message similar to the following:

The system cannot write to the specified device.

Product Activation

The Microsoft Windows XP product activation feature creates a numerical key based on the virtual hardware in the virtual machine where it is installed. Changes in the configuration of the virtual machine might require you to reactivate the operating system. There are some steps you can take to minimize the number of significant changes.

- Set the final memory size for your virtual machine before you activate Windows XP. When you cross certain thresholds—approximately 32MB, 64MB, 128MB, 256MB, 512MB and 1GB—the product activation feature sees the changes as significant.

NOTE The size reported to the Windows product activation feature is slightly less than the actual amount configured for the virtual machine. For example, 128MB is interpreted as falling in the 64MB–127MB range.

- Install VMware Tools before you activate Windows XP. When the SVGA driver in the VMware Tools package is installed, it activates features in the virtual graphics adapter that make it appear to Windows XP as a new graphics adapter.

- If you want to experiment with any other aspects of the virtual machine configuration, do so before activating Windows XP. Keep in mind that you have 30 days for experimentation before you have to activate the operating system.

For more details on Windows XP product activation, see the Microsoft Web site.

PAE Message During Installation

VMware Workstation 5.0: If you are installing the guest operating system on a VMware Workstation, 5.0 or lower, on a host computer that has PAE technology, you might get an error message. The error message indicates the guest operating system is trying to use PAE. Discontinue the installation process if this occurs, and enable PAE for the affected virtual machine.

To enable PAE for the virtual machine

Make sure the virtual machine is powered off.

Edit the configuration (.vmx) file for the virtual machine by adding the following line to the file:

`paevm="true"

Power on the virtual machine and install the guest operating system.

Hibernation

Should you experience difficulties with the hibernation feature for this guest operating system, suspend the virtual machine instead.

Checked (Debug) Build

VMware GSX Server: In order to install and run a checked (debug) build of Windows XP in a virtual machine, you must first edit the virtual machine's configuration file (.vmx). Add the following line:
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

`uhci.forceHaltBit = TRUE`

**Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020).

**ESX Server 3.x:** Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.

**ESX Server Virtual Machine Running Windows Might Fail to Power On if Not Rebooted After VMware Tools Installation**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** After you install VMware Tools on an ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machine that is running Microsoft Windows, the VMware Tools installer asks you to reboot the virtual machine. If you choose not to reboot at that time, and subsequently remove power from the virtual machine, either by using the button Power Off Virtual Machine in the remote console, or by shutting down the ESX Server, you might then be unable to power on the virtual machine again. When you attempt to do so, the virtual machine might fail to boot up, displaying the message STOP 0x0000007B: INACCESSIBLE_BOOT_DEVICE. To avoid this problem, after installing VMware Tools, be sure to reboot the virtual machine when the VMware Tools installer prompts you.
Windows 2000

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows 2000 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows 2000:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Professional – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Windows 2000 Server – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Advanced Server – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Update Support
    
    Service Pack 1 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    
    Service Pack 2 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    
    Service Pack 3 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    
    Service Pack 4 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
    
    SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    
    Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Professional, Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Advanced Server – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    
    Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Professional, Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Advanced Server – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
- **VMware ACE**
  
  Professional – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Windows 2000 Server – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Advanced Server – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Update Support
    
    Service Pack 1 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
    
    Service Pack 2 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
    
    Service Pack 3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
◆ Service Pack 4 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

◆ VMware GSX Server
Professional – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
Windows 2000 Server – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
Advanced Server – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
Update Support
◆ Service Pack 1 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
◆ Service Pack 2 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
◆ Service Pack 3 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
◆ Service Pack 4 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
◆ Service Pack 4 checked build for Windows 2000 Professional – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

◆ VMware Server
Professional – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
Windows 2000 Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
Advanced Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
Update Support
◆ Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
◆ Service Pack 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
◆ Service Pack 3
  ◆ Professional – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  ◆ Windows 2000 Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  ◆ Advanced Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
◆ Service Pack 4
  ◆ Professional – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  ◆ Windows 2000 Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  ◆ Advanced Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

Additional Support
◆ SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

◆ VMware ESX Server
Professional, Service Pack 4 – ESX 2.0.2, 2.1.3, 2.5.1, 2.5.3, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Windows 2000 Server, Service Pack 3 or 4 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Advanced Server, Service Pack 3 or 4 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Update Support

Windows 2000 Server and Advanced Server

- Service Pack 3 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 4 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 4 – Update Rollup 1 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Professional

- Service Pack 3 – ESX 4.0
- Service Pack 4 – ESX 2.0.2, 2.1.3, 2.5.1, 2.5.3, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 4 – Update Rollup 1 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1.3, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

VMware Fusion

Professional, Service Pack 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Windows 2000 Server, Service Pack 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Advanced Server, Service Pack 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Update Support

- Service Pack 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install a supported version of Windows 2000 in a virtual machine using the corresponding Windows 2000 distribution CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

ESX Server, VirtualCenter, or vCenter Server: If you are using the virtual LSI Logic SCSI adapter, you must download the driver from the download center at the LSI Logic Web site. Go to http://wwwlsi.com/cm/DownloadSearch.do and download the LSI20320-R SCSI adapter driver for your guest operating system.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Windows 2000 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.
VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

After you install VMware Tools, you must change your Windows 2000 screen area to be greater than 640x480 pixels; if you do not change it, Windows 2000 uses the standard VGA driver, and your performance will suffer.

Known Issues

Service Pack 3 Might Fail to Boot

A Windows 2000 guest with Service Pack 3 installed might fail to boot. A dialog box appears, saying “The Logon User Interface DLL msgina.dll failed to load.”

You can resolve this problem by installing Service Pack 4. Refer to this VMware Knowledge Base article: http://kb.vmware.com/kb/907.

If you do not want to upgrade to Service Pack 4, you can work around the problem. Be sure the virtual machine is not running, and then use a text editor to add the following line to the virtual machine's configuration file:

MAGICBOOT1 = 700

If a value of 700 (representing 700 microseconds) does not enable you to start the guest operating system, experiment with higher values. Increase the number to 800 for the second try, 900 for the third try and so on until the guest starts.

If you are booting multiple virtual machines or running other stressful workloads at the same time, you might need to assign a higher magicboot1 value. For faster boot times, you can experiment with values between 1 and 700 to find the smallest value that allows the virtual machine to boot.

Installation Hangs

VMware GSX Server: If the installation of the guest operating system hangs, search our Knowledge Base at http://kb.vmware.com/ for a possible answer to your problem.

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

ESX Server 3.x: Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.

ESX Server Virtual Machine Running Windows Might Fail to Power On if Not Rebooted After VMware Tools Installation

ESX Server 2.5.x: After you install VMware Tools on an ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machine that is running Microsoft Windows, the VMware Tools installer asks you to reboot the virtual machine. If you choose not to reboot at that time, and subsequently remove power from the virtual machine, either by using the button Power Off Virtual Machine in the remote console, or by shutting down the ESX Server, you might then be unable to power on the virtual machine again. When you attempt to do so, the virtual machine might fail to boot up, displaying the message STOP 0x0000007B: INACCESSIBLE_BOOT_DEVICE. To avoid this problem, after installing VMware Tools, be sure to reboot the virtual machine when the VMware Tools installer prompts you.
Windows NT 4.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows NT 4.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows NT 4.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6a – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6a – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6a – 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  Support Considerations
  - If you intend to run a Windows NT virtual machine with IDE virtual disks on a multiprocessor host computer, you might notice slower than expected disk input/output performance. For more information, see Disk Performance in Windows NT Guests on Multiprocessor Hosts in the GSX Server documentation.

- **VMware Server**
  Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6a – Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6a – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- **VMware Fusion**
  Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6a – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install Windows NT 4.0 (Workstation or Server) in a virtual machine using the standard Windows NT CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Windows NT CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Windows NT.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.
4. Virtual disks support DMA transfers for better performance.
You can enable the feature after installing Windows NT. You need the NT Service Pack 3 or 4 CD to enable this option. Once the virtual machine is running Windows NT, insert the SP3 or SP4 CD in the drive, run DMACHECK.EXE from the \SUPPORT\UTILS\i386 folder on the CD and click the Enabled option for the IDE controller/channel that is configured with the virtual disk (typically channel 0 only, unless you have the virtual machine configured with multiple virtual disks).

**NOTE** The DMA option should not be enabled for any IDE channel that has a CD-ROM drive configured for it. Enabling DMA for such a configuration causes an error. If you have a virtual disk and a CD-ROM attached as master and slave to the primary IDE controller (channel 0) and you want to enable DMA, power off the virtual machine and use the Configuration Editor to move the CD-ROM to the secondary IDE controller (channel 1) at IDE 1:0. Then boot the virtual machine with Windows NT, run DMACHECK and enable DMA for channel 0 only.

**NOTE** DMA is always enabled on SCSI virtual disks.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** To view VMware Tools online help in a Windows NT 4.0 guest, Windows NT 4.0 must have Internet Explorer 4.0 or greater installed.

**Setting up a Windows NT 4.0 Guest with Multiple Disks**

To set up a virtual machine running Windows NT 4.0 and using multiple disks, you must first create a virtual machine with only one disk. Install Windows NT on that disk. Then use the configuration tools in your VMware product to add the additional disks.

In addition, note that if you have a Windows NT 4.0 guest with a SCSI virtual disk, you cannot add both an additional SCSI disk and an IDE disk to the configuration.

**Enabling Networking After Installing Windows NT**

If networking was disabled at the time you installed Windows NT, you can enable it after installing the operating system. Shut down Windows NT and power off the virtual machine. Add the network adapter to the virtual machine's configuration, and then follow the instructions below to install the network driver in the Windows NT guest operating system.

1. Power on the virtual machine.
2. While Windows NT is booting, insert the Windows NT 4.0 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Log on to Windows NT and install the AMD PCNET driver:
   a. Open the Network properties page by double-clicking the Network icon in Control Panel. Change to the Network Adapters screen by clicking the Adapters tab.
   b. Click the Add button and select the AMD PCNET Family Ethernet Adapter from the list.
   c. A message pops up prompting you to enter a path for the Windows NT files. Specify the \i386 folder on the CD in the path you enter (for example, type D:\i386 if the CD is in drive D) and click Continue.
   d. Windows NT setup prompts you for the Windows NT files again. Click Continue.
   e. Use the default adapter settings; they do not need to be changed. Windows NT setup prompts you again for a path to the Windows NT files. Click Continue to finish installing the driver.
Known Issues

Memory Limits if Installing with No Service Pack

If your Windows NT 4.0 installation disc does not include at least Service Pack 2, you cannot install the operating system in a virtual machine that has more than 3,444MB of memory. To work around the problem, temporarily reduce the memory size of the virtual machine to 3,444MB or less, install Windows NT, install Service Pack 6a, and then set the memory size to the value you want.

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

ESX Server Virtual Machine Running Windows Might Fail to Power On if Not Rebooted After VMware Tools Installation

ESX Server 2.5.x: After you install VMware Tools on an ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machine that is running Microsoft Windows, the VMware Tools installer asks you to reboot the virtual machine. If you choose not to reboot at that time, and subsequently remove power from the virtual machine, either by using the button Power Off Virtual Machine in the remote console, or by shutting down the ESX Server, you might then be unable to power on the virtual machine again. When you attempt to do so, the virtual machine might fail to boot up, displaying the message STOP 0x0000007B : INACCESSIBLE_BOOT_DEVICE. To avoid this problem, after installing VMware Tools, be sure to reboot the virtual machine when the VMware Tools installer prompts you.
Windows Me

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows Me operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows Me:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Windows Me – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Windows Me – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Windows Me – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Windows Me – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion**
  Windows Me – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install Windows Millennium Edition in a virtual machine using the standard Windows Me CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Windows Me CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Windows Me.
3. Choose to boot from CD-ROM, and then select the option **Start Windows Me Setup from CD-ROM**. The setup program runs FDISK and reboots.
4. Once again, choose to boot from CD-ROM, and then select the option **Start Windows Me Setup from CD-ROM**. The setup program continues installing Windows Me.
5. Follow the Windows Me installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).
Known Issues

Lack of Support for USB 2.0 Drivers

Workstation 6.x: This guest operating system does not provide drivers for USB 2.0 on Workstation 6.x. As a result, when you install this operating system, a warning will display indicating that the device driver for USB 2.0 cannot be found. To resolve this issue, disable the USB Controller on the guest.

To disable the USB 2.0 controller

1. Open the virtual machine settings editor (VM > Settings).
2. Select Settings to open the Virtual Machine Settings dialog box.
3. Select Hardware, and deselect the Enable USB 2.0 check box for the USB Controller.
4. Click OK.
Windows 98

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows 98 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows 98:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Windows 98 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **Additional Support**
  - Visual Studio Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Windows 98 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2
  - VMware ACE Windows 98 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - VMware GSX Server Windows 98 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  - VMware Server Windows 98 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - ESX Server
    Windows 98 – ESX 4.0
    Windows 98 Second Edition – ESX 4.0
  - VMware Fusion
    Windows 98 SE – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install Windows 98 in a virtual machine using the standard Windows 98 CD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Windows 98 CD in the CD-ROM drive.

   **NOTE** Some Windows 98 packages require that you boot from a floppy disk. If you have such a package, insert the boot floppy in the floppy disk drive. Follow the on-screen instructions. Be sure to run **FDISK** and **FORMAT** when the installer prompts you to do so.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Windows 98.
3 Choose to boot from CD-ROM, and then select the option Start Windows 98 Setup from CD-ROM. The setup program runs FDISK and reboots.

4 Once again, choose to boot from CD-ROM, and then select the option Start Windows 98 Setup from CD-ROM. The setup program continues installing Windows 98.

5 Follow the Windows 98 installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**Enabling Networking After Installing Windows 98**

If networking was disabled at the time you installed Windows 98, you can enable it after the operating system has been installed. To set up networking for a virtual machine, power off the virtual machine and add a network adapter to the configuration. When you power on the virtual machine, Windows 98 automatically detects an AMD PCNET Family Ethernet Adapter (PCI-ISA) and prompts for the Windows 98 CD-ROM to install drivers. The default Ethernet adapter settings should work well and do not need to be changed. Use the Network icon in the Windows 98 Control Panel to view or change network settings. For example, you might want to add the TCP/IP protocol since Windows 98 does not install it by default.

**Known Issues**

**Phantom COM Ports**

After Windows 98 has been installed, you might notice COM5 and COM6 devices exist within the Windows Device Manager. These devices do not actually exist and are not consuming IRQ or other resources. You can remove them using the Windows device manager if you like.

**Lack of Support for USB 2.0 Drivers**

**Workstation 6.x:** This guest operating system does not provide drivers for USB 2.0 on Workstation 6.x. As a result, when you install this operating system, a warning will display indicating that the device driver for USB 2.0 cannot be found. To resolve this issue, disable the USB Controller on the guest.

**To disable the USB 2.0 controller**

1 Open the virtual machine settings editor (VM > Settings).

2 Select Settings to open the Virtual Machine Settings dialog box.

3 Select Hardware, and deselect the Enable USB 2.0 check box for the USB Controller.

4 Click OK.
Windows 95

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Windows 95 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows 95:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Windows 95 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  - Windows 95 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  - Windows 95 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **ESX Server**
  - **Windows 95**, Service Pack 1 – ESX 4.0
  - Windows 95 OSR1 – ESX 4.0
  - Windows 95 OSR2 – ESX 4.0
  - Windows 95 OSR2.1 – ESX 4.0
  - Windows 95 OSR2.5 – ESX 4.0

- **VMware Server**
  - Windows 95 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion**
  - Windows 95, Service Pack 1 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install Windows 95 in a virtual machine using a standard Windows 95 boot floppy and CD-ROM. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

**NOTE** Some Windows 95 distributions provide instructions that do not include the steps to FDISK and FORMAT a C: drive. You must FDISK and FORMAT the virtual hard disk drives before running Windows 95 setup.

The instructions below are for the simplest case of one virtual IDE hard drive and one virtual IDE CD-ROM drive. If you have configured the virtual machine with more than one IDE hard drive, you should also FDISK and FORMAT these drives before installing Windows 95. If you have configured the virtual machine with more than one virtual hard drive or more than one virtual CD-ROM, you might need to use device letters that are different from those in the instructions below.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.
NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Windows 95 CD-ROM Setup Boot Disk in floppy drive A: used by your virtual machine and insert the Windows 95 CD in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Windows 95.

3. After the virtual machine boots, if you are presented with a choice of CD-ROM drivers, select the first IDE driver option available (even if your computer has a SCSI CD-ROM drive).

4. Partition the virtual disk.
   A:\> FDISK
   Answer the questions.

   NOTE If you create a primary partition that is smaller than the full size of the virtual disk, be sure the partition is marked active.

5. Reboot Windows 95. If the cursor is not already within the virtual machine window, click in the virtual machine display, and then press Ctrl+Alt+Ins on a Windows host or Ctrl+Alt+Del on a Linux host. If prompted on reboot to select a CD-ROM driver, select the first IDE CD-ROM driver from the list.

6. Format the C: drive.
   A:\> FORMAT C: /S

7. Start the Windows 95 installation.
   A:\> D:\WIN95\SETUP /IS

   NOTE An intermittent problem can occur during Windows 95 installations in a virtual machine. Shortly after the Windows 95 Setup program is started, Scandisk runs to completion, and when the Windows 95 Setup program should start its graphical user interface, the virtual machine returns to an MS-DOS prompt. VMware recommends you reboot the virtual machine and rerun Windows 95 Setup. You do not need to FDISK or FORMAT the drive again. If this problem occurs reproducibly, please report it to VMware technical support.

8. If the virtual machine’s Ethernet adapter is enabled, you have to manually add an Ethernet driver because Windows 95 does not detect it during the Analyzing Computer phase (even if you selected the Network Adapter detection option). Do the following to enable networking:
   a. Continue with the Windows 95 installation until you get to the Windows 95 Setup Wizard/Setup Options screen. Change the default setting from Typical to Custom and click Next to continue.
   b. From the Network Configuration screen (which appears after the Analyzing Computer phase), click Add, select the Adapter component, select Advanced Micro Devices from the manufacturer window and AMD PCNET Family Ethernet Adapter (PCI&ISA) from the network adapter window.
   c. If you need TCP/IP networking, add it from the Network Configuration screen (Windows 95 Setup does not enable TCP/IP by default). If you don’t do this, the first phase of the Windows 95 installation does not copy some of the files it will need later, and the entire installation fails.

   Also be sure that the Microsoft NetBEUI protocol is installed. It might not be installed by default.

10 VMware virtual disks support DMA transfers for better performance. The feature can be enabled after you have installed Windows 95 on a virtual IDE disk. Follow these steps to enable the feature:

a. Right-click **My Computer** and select **Properties**.
b. From the System Properties dialog box, click the **Device Manager** tab.
c. Double-click the **Disk Drives** device category.
d. Double-click the **GENERIC IDE DISK TYPE01** device.
e. Click the **Settings** tab and select the **DMA** check box.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**Enabling Networking After Installing Windows 95**

If networking was disabled at the time you installed Windows 95, you can enable it after installing the operating system. Shut down Windows 95 and power off the virtual machine. Add the network adapter to the virtual machine's configuration, and then follow the instructions below to install the network driver in the Windows 95 guest operating system.

1. Power on the virtual machine.
2. When Windows 95 reboots, it auto-detects an AMD PCNET Family Ethernet Adapter (PCI&ISA) and prompts for the Windows 95 CD-ROM to install drivers. The default Ethernet adapter settings should work fine and do not need to be changed.
3. Double-click the **Network** icon in the Control Panel to view or change network settings. For example, you might want to add the TCP/IP protocol since Windows 95 does not install it by default.

**Known Issues**

**Networking Might Not Work**

After you install Windows 95, you might find that networking is not working in the guest operating system. There are several things you should check.

- Either remove your virtual machine's virtual USB adapter using the configuration tools in your VMware product or—if your release of Windows 95 includes USB support—be sure the USB drivers are installed.
- Check the Windows 95 Device Manager to see if COM5 and COM6 devices are listed. If they are, disable or remove them.
- Be sure that NetBEUI was installed when you set up networking.
- Be sure that Windows 95 Plug and Play properly detected the virtual Ethernet adapter. If it did not, you might need to use the Device Manager to remove the adapter, and then reinstall it using the Add New Hardware control panel.

**Phantom COM Ports Might Appear**

After you install Windows 95, you might notice Unknown, COM5 and COM6 devices exist in the Windows Device Manager. These devices do not actually exist and are not consuming IRQ or other resources. You can remove them using the Windows Device Manager if you like.

**Lack of Support for USB 2.0 Drivers**

**Workstation 6.x:** This guest operating system does not provide drivers for USB 2.0 on Workstation 6.x. As a result, when you install this operating system, a warning will display indicating that the device driver for USB 2.0 cannot be found. To resolve this issue, disable the **USB Controller** on the guest.
To disable the USB 2.0 controller

1. Open the virtual machine settings editor (VM > Settings).
2. Select Settings to open the Virtual Machine Settings dialog box.
3. Select Hardware, and deselect the Enable USB 2.0 check box for the USB Controller.
4. Click OK.
MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for MS-DOS 6.22 and the Windows 3.1x operating system.

16-Bit Support for MS-DOS 6.22

The following VMware products support 16-bit MS-DOS 6.22:

- ESX Server
  MS-DOS 6.22 – ESX 4.0

32-Bit Support for Windows 3.1.x

The following VMware products support 32-bit Windows 3.1x:

- ESX Server
  Windows 3.1x – ESX 4.0

32-Bit Support for MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1.x

The following VMware products support 32-bit MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x:

- VMware Workstation
  MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware GSX Server
  MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- VMware Server
  MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x – VMware Server1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- VMware Fusion
  MS-DOS 6.22 and Windows 3.1x – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

MS-DOS 6.22 Installation Notes

You can install MS-DOS 6.22 inside a virtual machine using the Microsoft full-version MS-DOS 6.22 installation disks. If you have the upgrade disks, you must install an earlier version of MS-DOS 6.22 before you upgrade. To start installing MS-DOS 6.22, put the first disk in the floppy drive used by your virtual machine, power on the virtual machine and follow the instructions on the screen.
After you install MS-DOS 6.22, VMware recommends that you install a CPU idle program within the virtual machine. Most versions of MS-DOS 6.22 do not idle the CPU when they are idle. Therefore, when you are running MS-DOS 6.22 in a virtual machine, the virtual machine takes up CPU time on the host even when MS-DOS 6.22 is idle. VMware products rely on the guest operating system to use the Halt instruction or advanced power management to unschedule the virtual machine when it is idle.

**Windows 3.1x Installation Notes**

You can install Windows 3.1x using the standard installation disks. VMware Workstation, VMware ACE and GSX Server virtual machines support the networking features found in Windows 3.11 (or Windows for Workgroups). If you set up networking, choose the Advanced Micro Devices PCNET Family (NDIS2/NDIS3) Ethernet driver.

**Known Issues**

**Mouse Problems**

You might intermittently encounter erratic mouse behavior in virtual machines running Windows 3.1x in window mode. This problem does not appear in the full screen mode.

**VMware Tools**

No VMware Tools package exists for MS-DOS 6.22 or Windows 3.1x guest operating systems; therefore, Windows 3.1x is limited to VGA mode graphics and you must always use the Ctrl+Alt key combination to release the mouse from a MS-DOS 6.22 or Windows 3.1x virtual machine.
Asianux Server 3.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Asianux Server 3.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Asianux Server 3.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Asianux Server 3.0 – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2 (Workstation 6.0.3 through 6.5.2 do not include PBMs or provide an easy install.)
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Asianux Server 3.0, Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1

- **ESX Server**
  Asianux Server 3.0 – ESX 4.0
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Asianux Server 3.0 releases

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Asianux Server 3.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Asianux Server 3.0 – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2 (Workstation 6.0.3 through 6.5.2 do not include PBMs or provide an easy install.)
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Asianux Server 3.0, Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0.1

- **ESX Server**
  Asianux Server 3.0 – ESX 4.0
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ESX 4.0
Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Asianux Server 3.0 releases

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Asianux Server 3.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Asianux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Asianux 3.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Asianux Server 3.0 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Asianux Server 3.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. In the Package Group Selection screen, choose Software Development and select individual packages. In the Individual Package Selection screen, use the arrow keys to move down to System Environment/Kernel and press Enter. Be sure that kernel-smp is deselected (no asterisk should appear between the brackets). The SMP kernel is not supported in a virtual machine. You do not need to change any other selections.
5. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen, or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the Asianux defaults.
   You might see a warning that begins “The partition table on device <devicename> was unreadable. To create new partitions it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.” This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted.
6. Click Yes to partition the drive.
7. If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

This completes basic installation of the Asianux Server 3.0 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Asianux Server 3.0 Service Pack 1 32-bit Guest is Displayed Incorrectly in the Summary Tab of VSphere Client After Installing VMware Tools**

After installing VMware Tools on an Asianux Server 3 Service Pack 1, 32-bit guest, the Summary tab in the VSphere Client UI displays the value for Asianux Server 3 as Other 2.6.x Linux 32-bit.

**SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall**

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
CentOS 5.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the CentOS 5.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit CentOS 5.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  CentOS 5.0 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - CentOS 5.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - CentOS 5.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  CentOS 5.2 – VMware Server 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  CentOS 5.0 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 5.1 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 5.2 – ESX 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  CentOS 5.3 – ESX 3.0.3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit CentOS 5.0, 5.1, 5.2, and 5.3 on ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: [http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf](http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf)
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.0 releases

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit CentOS 5.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  CentOS 5.0 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - CentOS 5.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - CentOS 5.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  CentOS 5.2 – VMware Server 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  CentOS 5.0 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 5.1 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 5.2 – ESX 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  CentOS 5.3 – ESX 3.0.3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit CentOS 5.0, 5.1, 5.2, and 5.3 on ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf.
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.0 releases

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing CentOS 5.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard CentOS distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing CentOS 5.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

When creating a virtual machine for CentOS 5.0:

- Select Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 64-bit for the guest operating system. CentOS 5 is not listed as an option.
- Configure the virtual machine with a minimum of 512MB of memory. If the virtual machine has less than 512MB of memory, CentOS 5.0 displays an error message as it loads certain VMware drivers.
- Use the LSI Logic SCSI adapter. CentOS 5.0 does not include a driver for the BusLogic SCSI adapter.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the CentOS 5.0 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing CentOS 5.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Do not select the Virtualization Option during the installation. Refer to knowledge base article 9134325 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/9134325 for more information.
5. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the CentOS defaults.
   You might see a warning that begins “The partition table on device <devicename> was unreadable. To create new partitions it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.” This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted.
6. Click Yes to partition the drive.

This completes basic installation of the CentOS 5.0 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.
IPv6
In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with
vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device
correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual
machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing
VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux
1 If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to
   NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2 In the file /etc/modprobe.conf, add the following lines:
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine
In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed
to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should
have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine
change. When a CentOS 5.0 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address in a key
configuration file. This can cause errors when the virtual machine's MAC address changes. If you experience
this problem, you can work around it by removing a line from the file. For eth0, for example, make the
following change:
1 Make a backup copy of the file /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0, and then open it in a
text editor.
2 Remove the line that begins with HWAddr.
3 Restart eth0.

SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall
This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine
to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledgebase article

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux
timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver
On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system.
Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
CentOS 4.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the CentOS 4.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit CentOS 4.0:

- VMware Server
  CentOS 4.7 – VMware Server 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on VMware Server 2.0.1

- VMware ESX Server
  CentOS 4.5 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 4.6 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 4.7 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit CentOS 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7 on ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit CentOS 4.0:

- VMware Server
  CentOS 4.7 – VMware Server 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on VMware Server 2.0.1

- VMware ESX Server
  CentOS 4.5 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 4.6 – ESX 4.0
  CentOS 4.7 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 64-bit CentOS 4.0, 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7 on ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing CentOS 4.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard CentOS distribution CD. Installing CentOS 4.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.
Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

When creating a virtual machine for CentOS 4.0:

- Select Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 64-bit for the guest operating system. CentOS 4 is not listed as an option.
- Configure the virtual machine with a minimum of 512MB of memory. If the virtual machine has less than 512MB of memory, CentOS 4 displays an error message as it loads certain VMware drivers.
- Use the LSI Logic SCSI adapter. CentOS 4 does not include a driver for the BusLogic SCSI adapter.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the CentOS 4.0 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing CentOS 4.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Do not select the Virtualization Option during the installation. Refer to knowledge base article 9134325 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/9134325 for more information.
5. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the CentOS defaults.
   
   You might see a warning that begins "The partition table on device <devicename> was unreadable. To create new partitions it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive." This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted.
6. Click Yes to partition the drive.

This completes basic installation of the CentOS 4.0 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modprobe.conf, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```
After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

**Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine**

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a CentOS 4.0 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address in a key configuration file. This can cause errors when the virtual machine's MAC address changes. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by removing a line from the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

1. Make a backup copy of the file `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0`, and then open it in a text editor.
2. Remove the line that begins with `HWAddr`.
3. Restart eth0.

**SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall**

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledgebase article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledgebase article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Debian 5.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Debian 5.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Debian 5.0:

- VMware ESX Server
  Debian 5.0 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Debian 5.0 releases

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Debian 4.0:

- VMware ESX Server
  Debian 5.0 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Debian 5.0 releases

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Debian 5.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Debian 5.0 distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Debian 5.0 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Debian 5.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**NOTE** As the installation progresses, the message Configuring apt/Scanning the mirror appears indicating that the network is being scanned. If your site uses an HTTP proxy, this message might persist for 10 minutes or longer, indicating that the installation has been delayed. If you wait, network scanning eventually stops and the installation resumes. When the installation completes, in the Debian 5.0 user interface, choose System > Preferences > Network Proxy to set the HTTP proxy in the Network Proxy Preferences dialog box.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.
To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Debian guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

**To enable root login in Debian**

1. Select System > Administration > Login Window, and click the Security tab.
2. Select the Allow local system administrator login check box and click Close.

**Known Issues**

**SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall**

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Debian 4.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Debian 4.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Debian 4.0:

- VMware ESX Server
  Debian 4.0 r3 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r4 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r5 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r6 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r7 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r8 – ESX 4.0

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Debian 4.0 releases

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Debian 4.0:

- VMware ESX Server
  Debian 4.0 r3 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r4 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r5 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r6 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r7 – ESX 4.0
  Debian 4.0 r8 – ESX 4.0

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Debian 4.0 releases

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Debian 4.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Debian 4.0 distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the Debian 4.0 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Debian 4.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

NOTE: As the installation progresses, the message Configuring apt/Scanning the mirror appears indicating that the network is being scanned. If your site uses an HTTP proxy, this message might persist for 10 minutes or longer, indicating that the installation has been delayed. If you wait, network scanning eventually stops and the installation resumes. When the installation completes, in the Debian 4.0 user interface, choose System > Preferences > Network Proxy to set the HTTP proxy in the Network Proxy Preferences dialog box.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

NOTE: For Debian 4.0, install VMware Tools using the tar installer.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Debian guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

To enable root login in Debian

1. Select System > Administration > Login window, and click the Security tab.
2. Select the Allow local system administrator login check box and click Close.

Known Issues

Xserver Fails to Start After Installing Debian 4.0 64-bit guest

After installing a Debian 4.0 64-bit guest, the Xserver fails to start. Install VMware Tools to eliminate this problem, or change the display driver for Debian 4.0 from amp to vesa in the /etc/X11/xorg.conf file.

To install VMware Tools:

1. Log in to the virtual machine as root.
2. Select VM > Guest > Install/Upgrade VMware Tools.
3. Locally mount the CD-ROM drive.
4. At the command line, enter cd /media/cdrom.
6. From the directory used to extract the tarball, start the VMware Tools installation: /vmware-install.pl.
7. After the installation completes, enter /etc/init.d/gdm restart.

SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.
Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware product supports 32-bit IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2:

- VMware ESX Server
  - IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 – ESX 4.0
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  - Support Considerations
    - There is no version of VMware Tools that supports IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2.

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard distribution CD.

Fulfill these requirements before you install OS/2 Warp 4.5.2:

- Configure OS swap with at least 120MB of space.
- Have both the OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 boot disk CD and the OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 install CD available for install.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 boot disk in the CD drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2.
3. Make sure Boot from CDROM Drive is enabled in the BIOS settings.
4. After installing the required drivers from the boot disk CD, insert the OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 install CD into the CD drive.
5. Press the F3 key to use the command line interface to partition the hard drive.
   Alternatively, press Enter to select the GUI mode.
6. Partition the hard disk drive using the FDISK utility. Create an appropriate start volume on which to install the guest, and save the FDISK settings.
7. Reinsert the OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 boot disk in the CD drive and reboot the guest.
8. After the initial startup completes, insert the OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 install CD in the CD drive.
   The start volume is displayed on the screen.
9. Select an appropriate volume to install the guest.
10. Format the filesystem with File Allocation Table (FAT) File System or High Performance File System (HPFS).
11. Continue the installation by selecting components, utilities, and other resources.
12. After completing the installation, reboot the guest.

DEPRECATED
Create Boot Disks
Create boot disks from the 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 install CD, using the CDINST utility on a running OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 guest.

1. Power on a system in which 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 is installed.
2. Insert the 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 install CD into the CD drive.
3. Double-click on the CDINST utility that is located in the root directory.
4. Insert blank disks, one by one respectively.
   This creates bootable disks for 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.5.2.

VMware Tools
There is no version of VMware Tools that supports IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2.

Known Issues

Scroll Up Mouse Wheel Operation Using a VI Client Does Not Work in 32-bit IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 Guest
The mouse scroll up operation does not work on a 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 guest when accessed through VI client.

Adding Disks to IBM OS/2 Warp Guests
VMware recommends these guidelines for adding additional disks to IBM OS/2 Warp guests:

- Additional disks size should be less than or equal to 528MB.
- Additional disks have to be of the same type already in use by the virtual machine. For example, if an IBM OS/2 Warp guest is installed on a BusLogic disk, any additional disks should also be BusLogic disks. The same is true for LSI Logic and IDE.

Installing CD-Writing Software on an IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 Guest Can Crash the System
Installing CD-writing software on an OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 causes the guest to crash with a trap error.
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware product supports 32-bit IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0:

- VMware ESX Server
  IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0
  Support Considerations
  - There is no version of VMware Tools that supports IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

Fulfil these minimum requirements before you install OS/2 Warp 4.0:

- OS swap requires 120MB space.
- Have the OS/2 Warp 4.0 boot disk CD and the OS/2 Warp 4.0 install CD available.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the first OS/2 Warp 4.0 installer disk in the disk drive.
2. Make sure Boot from Removable Devices – Legacy Floppy Drives is enabled from the BIOS settings.
3. Insert the second and third installer disks when requested.
4. After installing the required drivers from the third disk, insert the OS/2 Warp 4.0 install CD into the CD drive.
5. After installing the required drivers from the boot disk CD, insert the OS/2 Warp 4.0 install CD into the CD drive.
6. Press the F3 key to use the command line interface to partition the hard drive.
   Alternatively, press Enter to select the GUI mode.
7. Partition the hard disk drive using the FDISK utility. Create an appropriate start volume on which to install the guest, and save the FDISK settings.
8. Re-insert the first OS/2 Warp 4.0 installer disk in the CD drive and reboot the guest.
9. Re-insert the second and third installer disks during the initial startup.
10. After the initial startup completes, insert the OS/2 Warp 4.0 install CD in the CD drive.
   The start volume is displayed on the screen.
11. Select an appropriate volume to install the guest.
12. Format the filesystem with File Allocation Table (FAT) File System or High Performance File System (HPFS).
13 Continue the installation by selecting components, utilities, and other resources.
14 After completing the installation, reboot the guest.

Create Boot Disks
Create boot disks from the 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.0 install CD, using the CDINST utility on a running OS/2 Warp 4.0 guest.

1  Power on a system in which 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.0 is installed.
2  Insert the 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.0 install CD into the CD drive.
3  Double-click on the CDINST utility that is located in the root directory.
4  Insert three blank disks, one by one, respectively.
   This will create bootable disks for 32-bit OS/2 Warp 4.0.

VMware Tools
There is no version of VMware Tools that supports IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0

Known Issues

Scroll Up Operation With the Mouse Wheel Using a VI Client Does Not Work in 32-bit IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 Guest
The mouse scroll up operation does not work on a 32-bit IBM OS/2 4.0 Warp guest when accessed through VI client.

Adding Additional Disks to IBM OS/2 Warp Guests
VMware recommends these guidelines for adding additional disks to IBM OS/2 Warp guest:

- Additional disks size should be less than or equal to 528MB.
- Additional disks have to be of the same type already in use by the virtual machine. For example, if an IBM OS/2 Warp guest is installed on a BusLogic disk, any additional disks should also be BusLogic disks. The same is true for LSI Logic and IDE.

Installing CD-writing Software on an OS/2 Warp 4.0 Guest Can Crash the System
Installing CD-writing software on an OS/2 Warp 4.0 causes the guest to crash with a trap error.
Mac OS X Server 10.5

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mac OS X Server 10.5 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mac OS X Server 10.5:

- VMware Fusion – experimental support only
  - Mac OS X Server 10.5 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Mac OS X Server 10.5.6 – Fusion 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Mac OS X Server 10.5:

- VMware Fusion – experimental support only
  - Mac OS X Server 10.5 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Mac OS X Server 10.5.6 – Fusion 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

Before creating a virtual machine, you must obtain the operating system and any necessary product keys for installation in that virtual machine. VMware Fusion does not come with any operating systems to install in virtual machines you create.

Installation Steps

1. From the Virtual Machine Library window, click the New button, or choose File > New.
   The New Virtual Machine Assistant starts.

2. In the Introduction panel, what you do depends on whether you are using an operating system installation CD, an operating system installation disk image file (ISO), or an existing virtual disk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operating system installation disk</td>
<td>Insert the disk into your Mac. VMware Fusion detects it and asks for confirmation that it is the operating system you want to install. If it is the correct OS, ensure that Install this operating system is selected and click Continue. If it is not the correct OS, select Install a different operating system and click Continue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system installation disk image file</td>
<td>Click Continue without disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existing virtual disk</td>
<td>Click Continue without disk.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

3 In the Installation Media panel, choose one of four options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use operating system installation disk</td>
<td>Use the pop-up menu to choose an operating system installation disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use operating system installation disk image file</td>
<td>Use the pop-up menu to browse for the .iso file for the operating system. Click Choose to identify the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use an existing virtual disk</td>
<td>Select this option to use an existing virtual disk. Use the pop-up menu to browse for the existing virtual disk (.vmdk) file. Click Choose to identify the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a custom virtual machine</td>
<td>Select this option if you are creating a custom virtual machine. For instance, you would use this if you are installing an older operating system off of floppy images.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Click Continue to go to the Operating System panel.

5 In the Operating System panel, ensure that the operating system and version for the new virtual machine are correct, or select the correct ones from the pop-up menus. Click Continue.

6 In the Finish panel:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To create the virtual machine according to the specifications listed in the Finish panel</td>
<td>Click Finish. Once you indicate the folder in which you want to save the virtual machine (default is your &lt;user&gt;/Documents/Virtual Machines folder), clicking Save launches the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To change disk size or other standard settings of the virtual machine</td>
<td>Click Customize Settings. Save the new virtual machine. Once you save the new virtual machine, Fusion displays the Settings window, with which you can make changes to the virtual machine's disk size, processor usage, removable devices, and so on. When you close the Settings window, VMware Fusion launches the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This completes basic setup of the virtual machine.

Next, install the Mac OS X Server 10.5 guest operating system. After you install Mac OS X Server, install VMware Tools.

VMware Tools

To install or Upgrade VMware Tools in a Mac OS X Server virtual machine follow these instructions.

Step 1 is performed on the Mac, within VMware Fusion menus, and the remaining steps are performed inside the virtual machine.

1 With the virtual machine powered on, choose Install VMware Tools from the Virtual Machine menu.

   If VMware Tools is already installed, the Virtual Machine menu displays the choice Upgrade VMware Tools instead of Install VMware Tools.

2 On the desktop of the guest Mac OS X Server virtual machine, open the VMware Tools CD icon.

3 Double-click on Install VMware Tools and follow all the steps in the installer assistant. Click OK when done.

VMware Fusion reboots the virtual machine to have VMware Tools take effect.
Known Issues

Use the Mac OS X Disk Utility to Increase the Disk Partition Size

If you increase the size of the disk partition when creating the virtual machine, you will not gain access to additional space. Instead, use the Mac OS X disk utility to increase the size of the disk partition after installing the operating system.
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4:

- VMware Workstation
  Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4.0 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- VMware ACE
  Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4.0 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4:

- VMware Workstation
  Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4.0 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- VMware ACE
  Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4.0 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandriva Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter text for text mode.
5. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandriva Linux automatically allocate the space. Select Use free space.
6 When you reach the Summary screen, configure the graphical interface.

Select Graphical Interface, and then click Do. Make the following selections:

- The resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use
- VMware virtual video card
- No when asked if you want to install updates to the packages
- No when asked if you want to start X when you reboot

This completes basic installation of the Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMWare product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System**

To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (`-su`) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program `vmware-config-tools.pl` and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.

**Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System**

When the guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt fails and an error message displays indicating the link is down. To work around this problem, become root (`su -`) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>
```

In both cases, `<n>` is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, `eth0`.

In each of the two files, add the following line:

```
MII_NOT_SUPPORTED=yes
```

Then run the command `ifup eth<n>` (where `<n>` is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.
**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at vmware.com/kb/1006427.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandriva Corporate Server 4

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandriva Corporate Server 4 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandriva Corporate Server 4:

- VMware Workstation
  Mandriva Corporate Server 4 – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- VMware ACE
  Mandriva Corporate Server 4 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Mandriva Corporate Server 4:

- VMware Workstation
  Mandriva Corporate Server 4 – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- VMware ACE
  Mandriva Corporate Server 4 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandriva Corporate Server 4 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandriva Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandriva Corporate Server 4 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandriva Corporate Server 4 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandriva Corporate Server 4.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandriva Corporate Server 4 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandriva Corporate Server 4.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter **text** for text mode.
5 In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandriva Linux automatically allocate the space. Select Use free space.

6 When you reach the Summary screen, configure the graphical interface.
   Select Graphical Interface, and then click Do. Make the following selections:
   - The resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use
   - VMware virtual video card
   - No when asked if you want to install updates to the packages
   - No when asked if you want to start X when you reboot

This completes basic installation of the Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1 If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2 In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:

   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System

To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (-su) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program vmware-config-tools.pl and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.

Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System

When the guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt fails and an error message indicating that the link is down. To work around this problem, become root (su –) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system:

/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>

In both cases, <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, eth0.

In each of the two files, add the following line:

MII_NOT_SUPPORTED=yes
Then run the command `ifup eth<n>` (where `<n>` is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandriva Linux 2008

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandriva Linux 2008 operating system.

32-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandriva Linux 2008:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandriva Linux 2008 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Mandriva Linux 2008 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  Mandriva Linux 2008 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 64-bit Mandriva Linux 2008:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandriva Linux 2008 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Mandriva Linux 2008 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  Mandriva Linux 2008 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes
Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandriva Linux 2008 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandriva Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandriva Linux 2008 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.
Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandriva Linux 2008 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandriva Linux 2008.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandriva Linux 2008 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter `text` for text mode.
5. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandriva Linux automatically allocate the space. Select **Use free space**.
6. When you reach the Summary screen, configure the graphical interface.

   Select **Graphical Interface**, and then click **Do**. Make the following selections:

   - The resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use
   - VMware virtual video card
   - **No** when asked if you want to install updates to the packages
   - **No** when asked if you want to start X when you reboot

This completes basic installation of the Mandriva Linux 2008 guest operating system.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

### IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

#### To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System
To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (\textasciitilde su) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program \texttt{vmware-config-tools.pl} and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.

Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System
When the guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt fails and an error message indicating that the link is down. To work around this problem, become root (\texttt{su \textasciitilde}) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system:

\begin{verbatim}
/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>
\end{verbatim}

In both cases, \texttt{<n>} is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, \texttt{eth0}.

In each of the two files, add the following line:

\begin{verbatim}
MII\_NOT\_SUPPORTED=yes
\end{verbatim}

Then run the command \texttt{ifup eth<n>} (where \texttt{<n>} is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.

SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall
This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article \url{http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020}.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at \url{http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427}.

Guest Screen Saver
On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandriva Linux 2007

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandriva Linux 2007 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandriva Linux 2007:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **VMware ACE**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- **VMware Server**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
- **VMware Fusion**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Mandriva Linux 2007:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **VMware ACE**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- **VMware Server**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
- **VMware Fusion**
  Mandriva Linux 2007 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandriva Linux 2007 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandriva Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandriva Linux 2007 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

*NOTE* During the Mandriva Linux 2007 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandriva Linux 2007.
NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandriva Linux 2007 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter text for text mode.
5. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandriva Linux automatically allocate the space. Select Use free space.
6. When you reach the Summary screen, configure the graphical interface.

   Select **Graphical Interface**, and then click Do. Make the following selections:

   - The resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use
   - VMware virtual video card
   - No when asked if you want to install updates to the packages
   - No when asked if you want to start X when you reboot

This completes basic installation of the Mandriva Linux 2007 guest operating system.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

### IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```bash
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister Netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

#### To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

### Known Issues

#### Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System

To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (su) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program vmware-config-tools.pl and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.
Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System

When the guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt fails and an error message indicating that the link is down. To work around this problem, become root (su –) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system:

/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>

In both cases, <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, eth0.

In each of the two files, add the following line:

MII_NOT_SUPPORTED=yes

Then run the command ifup eth<n> (where <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandriva Linux 2006

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandriva Linux 2006 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandriva Linux 2006:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Mandriva Linux 2006:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  Mandriva Linux 2006 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandriva Linux 2006 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandriva Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandriva Linux 2006 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandriva Linux 2006 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandriva Linux 2006.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandriva Linux 2006 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter **text** for text mode.
5. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandriva Linux automatically allocate the space. Select **Use free space**.
6. When you reach the Summary screen, configure the graphical interface.

   Select **Graphical Interface**, and then click **Do**. Make the following selections:
   - The resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use
   - VMware virtual video card
   - **No** when asked if you want to install updates to the packages
   - **No** when asked if you want to start X when you reboot

This completes basic installation of the Mandriva Linux 2006 guest operating system.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

### IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System

To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (−su) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program `vmware-config-tools.pl` and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.

Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System

When the guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt fails and an error message indicating that the link is down. To work around this problem, become root (su −) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>
```

In both cases, `<n>` is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, eth0.

In each of the two files, add the following line:

```
MII_NOT_SUPPORTED=yes
```

Then run the command `ifup eth<n>` (where `<n>` is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandrake Linux 10.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandrake Linux 10.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandrake Linux 10.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandrake Linux 10.1 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Mandrake Linux 10.1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Mandrake Linux 10.1 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Mandrake Linux 10.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandrake Linux 10.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandrake Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandrake Linux 10.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandrake Linux 10.1 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandrake Linux 10.1.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Mandrake Linux 10.1 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandrake Linux 10.1.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter text for text mode.
5. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandrake Linux automatically allocate the space. Select Use free space.
6. When you reach the Summary screen, configure the graphical interface. Select Graphical Interface, and then click Do. Make the following selections:
   - The resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use
   - VMware virtual video card
   - No when asked if you want to install updates to the packages
   - No when asked if you want to start X when you reboot

This completes basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 10.1 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System**

To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (-su) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program `vmware-config-tools.pl` and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.
Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System

When the guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt fails and an error message indicating that the link is down. To work around this problem, become root (su –) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system:

/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>

In both cases, <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, eth0.

In each of the two files, add the following line: MII_NOT_SUPPORTED=yes

Then run the command ifup eth<n> (where <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.

Display Issues

You might encounter a display issue with the Mandrake Linux 10.1 console. To resolve this issue, you need to comment out the vga=788 line in the lilo.conf file.

1. Log in as root at the command line.
2. Change directories to the etc directory.
3. Use a text editor to comment out the vga=788 line in the lilo.conf file.

```bash
label="linux"
root=/dev/sda1
initrd=/boot/initrd.img
append="acpi=ht resume=/dev/sda5 splash=silent"
vga=788
read-only
```
4. Enter lilo at the command line to run the file.
5. Reboot the guest.

Any display issues should be resolved.
Mandrake Linux 10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandrake Linux 10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandrake Linux 10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandrake Linux 10 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Mandrake Linux 10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Mandrake Linux 10 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Mandrake Linux 10 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandrake Linux 10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandrake Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandrake Linux 10 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandrake Linux 10 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandrake Linux 10.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandrake Linux 10 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandrake Linux 10.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter text for text mode.
5. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandrake Linux automatically allocate the space. Select Use free space.
6. When you reach the Summary screen, configure the graphical interface.
   - Select Graphical Interface, and then click Do. Make the following selections:
     - The resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use
     - VMware virtual video card
     - No when asked if you want to install updates to the packages
     - No when asked if you want to start X when you reboot

This completes basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 10 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:

   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System

To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (–su) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program vmware-config-tools.pl and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

Getting a DHCP Address in the Guest Operating System
When the guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt fails and an error message indicating that the link is down. To work around this problem, become root (su –) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system:

/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>

In both cases, <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, eth0.

In each of the two files, add the following line:

MII_NOT_SUPPORTED=yes

Then run the command ifup eth<n> (where <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver
On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandrake Linux 9.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandrake Linux 9.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandrake Linux 9.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Mandrake Linux 9.2 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  Mandrake Linux 9.2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  Mandrake Linux 9.2 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  
  Mandrake Linux 9.2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandrake Linux 9.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandrake Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandrake Linux 9.2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

---

**NOTE** During the Mandrake Linux 9.2 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandrake Linux 9.2.

---

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

---

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandrake Linux 9.2 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine.
3. Install this operating system as you would on a physical machine.
   The following steps include only those steps that are specific to installing this guest on a VMware virtual machine.
4. Click in the opening screen and press F1 to install using text mode.
5. At the command line, type `text` and press Enter.
6. In the DrakX Partitioning wizard found the following solutions screen, select **Use free space** and select Next.
   Unless you have special disk requirements, let Mandrake Linux allocate the space.
7. When you reach the Package Group Selection screen, select the type of computer on which you installed your VMware product.
   If you installed your VMware product on a laptop computer, make the following selections:
      a. Click **Advanced**.
      b. Select **Individual** package selection and select **Next**.
      c. Scroll to **numlock** and deselect the asterisk and select **Next**.
         If you do not disable numlock when you install the guest on a laptop, the number lock is always active in the guest. You cannot disable it by pressing the Num Lock key.
8. When you reach the Summary screen, select **Graphical interface** and select **Do**.
9. Make the following selections for the graphical interface:
   - A monitor for the guest
   - VMware virtual video card
   - XFree 4.3
   - The resolution and refresh rate for the guest
   - **No** to not test the configuration
   - **No** to not start X when you reboot
   When you complete the graphical interface selections, the Summary screen reappears.
10. In the Summary screen, select **Next**.
11. Select **No** to not install updates to the packages.
12. Select **Reboot** to complete the basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 9.2 guest operating system.
This completes basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 9.2 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**NOTE** With a Mandrake Linux 9.2 guest, you should install VMware Tools from the Linux console. Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools.

**NOTE** Provided you installed the XFree 4.3 X server when you installed the guest operating system (as advised in the install steps), when you start the VMware Tools installation script (by typing `./vmware-install.pl` in the `vmware-tools-distrib` directory), the following message appears:

```
Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?
```

If you plan to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the `XF86Config-4.dist` file to `XF86Config-4.vm`. The latter file is used when dual-booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.

**NOTE** As you are installing and configuring VMware Tools, the configuration program asks for the location of `lspci`. When that prompt appears, enter the following path:

```
/usr/bin/lspcidrake
```

**Known Issues**

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.
Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandake Linux 9.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandake Linux 9.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandake Linux 9.1:

- VMware GSX Server
  
  Mandake Linux 9.1 – GSX Server 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandake Linux 9.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandake Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandake Linux 9.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  During the Mandake Linux 9.1 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandake Linux 9.1.

**NOTE**  With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE**  If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product – ESX Server or GSX Server — on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandake Linux 9.1 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandake Linux 9.1.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter **text** for text mode.
5. Use the Expert installer.
6. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandake Linux automatically allocate the space. Click **Use free space**.
7. **VMware GSX Server:** When selecting a boot loader, use **LILO with text menu**. Do not use the graphical version of **LILO**. It causes the virtual machine to hang.
8. Do not create a custom boot disk when prompted.
9. Near the end of the installation, after files have been copied, you reach the monitor setup screen. Select the resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use. Select **VMware** virtual video card.
10 You are offered a choice of 2 XFree86 X servers to install. Choose XFree 4.2.1. This driver recognizes the VMware SVGA driver.

11 When the installer asks if you want to test the configuration, answer No.

12 When the installer asks whether to start X when you reboot, answer No.

13 When the installer asks if you want to install updates to the packages, answer No.

This completes basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 9.1 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1 If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2 In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

```
alias ipv6 off
alias net-pf-10 off
```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**NOTE** With a Mandrake Linux 9.1 guest, you should install VMware Tools from the Linux console. Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools.

**NOTE** If you installed the XFree 4.2.0 X server when you installed the guest operating system (as advised in the install steps), when you start the VMware Tools installation script (by typing `.vmware-install.pl` in the `vmware-tools-distrib` directory), the following message appears:

```
Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?
```

If you plan to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the `XF86Config-4.dist` file to `XF86Config-4.vm`. The latter file is used when dual-booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.

**NOTE** As you are installing and configuring VMware Tools, the configuration program asks for the location of `lspci`. When that prompt appears, enter the following path:

```
/usr/bin/lspcidrake
```
Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver
On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandrake Linux 9.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandrake Linux 9.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandrake Linux 9.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandrake Linux 9.0 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Mandrake Linux 9.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Mandrake Linux 9.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Mandrake Linux 9.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandrake Linux 9.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandrake Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandrake Linux 9.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandrake Linux 9.0 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandrake Linux 9.0.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandrake Linux 9.0 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandrake Linux 9.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the text mode installer. At the opening screen, press F1 for options, and then enter text for text mode.
5. Use the Expert installer.
6. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandrake Linux automatically allocate the space. Click Use free space.
7. VMware GSX Server: When selecting a boot loader, use LILO with text menu. Do not use the graphical version of LILO. It causes the virtual machine to hang.
8. Do not create a custom boot disk when prompted.
9. Near the end of the installation, after files have been copied, you reach the monitor setup screen. Select the resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use. Select VMware virtual video card.
10. You are offered a choice of 2 XFree86 X servers to install. Choose XFree 4.2.1. This driver recognizes the VMware SVGA driver.
11. When the installer asks if you want to test the configuration, answer No.
12. When the installer asks whether to start X when you reboot, answer No.
13. When the installer asks if you want to install updates to the packages, answer No.

This completes basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 9.0 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**NOTE** With a Mandrake Linux 9.0 guest, you should install VMware Tools from the Linux console. Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools.
NOTE  Provided you installed the XFree 4.2.0 X server when you installed the guest operating system (as
dvised in the install steps), when you start the VMware Tools installation script (by typing
./vmware-install.pl in the vmware-tools-distrib directory), the following message appears:

Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver
included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a
stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?

If you plan to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes
again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the XF86Config-4.dist file to XF86Config-4.vm. The
latter file is used when dual-booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.

NOTE  As you are installing and configuring VMware Tools, the configuration program asks for the location
of lspci. When that prompt appears, enter the following path:

/usr/bin/lspci

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux
timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system.
Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running
on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on
which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide
architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are
available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the
wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host
with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel
processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you
move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to
experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandrake Linux 8.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandrake Linux 8.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandrake Linux 8.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Mandrake Linux 8.2 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Mandrake Linux 8.2 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Mandrake Linux 8.2 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Mandrake Linux 8.2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandrake Linux 8.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandrake Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandrake Linux 8.2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  During the Mandrake Linux 8.2 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandrake Linux 8.2.

**NOTE**  With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE**  If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandrake Linux 8.2 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandrake Linux 8.2.
Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.

Use the Expert installer.

In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandrake Linux auto-allocate the space.

When selecting a boot loader, use **LILO with text menu**. Do not use the graphical version of **LILO**. It causes the virtual machine to hang.

Do not create a custom boot disk when prompted.

You are offered a choice of 2 XFree86 X servers to install. Choose **XFree 4.2.0**. This driver recognizes the VMware SVGA driver.

Near the end of the installation, after files have been copied, you reach the monitor setup screen. Choose the resolution and refresh rate you want your guest to use.

When the installer asks if you want to test the configuration, answer **No**.

When the installer asks if you want to install system updates, answer **No**.

When the installer asks whether to start X when you reboot, answer **No**.

This completes basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 8.2 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**NOTE**  With a Mandrake Linux 8.2 guest, you should install VMware Tools from the Linux console. Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools.

**NOTE**  Provided you installed the XFree 4.2.0 X server when you installed the guest operating system (as advised in the install steps), when you start the VMware Tools installation script (by typing `./vmware-install.pl` in the `vmware-tools-distrib` directory), the following message appears:

```
Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?
```
If you plan to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the XF86Config-4.dist file to XF86Config-4.vm. The latter file is used when dual-booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.

NOTE As you are installing and configuring VMware Tools, the configuration program asks for the location of lspci. When that prompt appears, enter the following path:

/usr/bin/lspciddrake

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1 operating systems.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1:

- VMware GSX Server
  Mandrake Linux 8.0, 8.1 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Mandrake Linux distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 installation, you are offered a choice of XFree86 X servers. You can choose either one, but do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 and create one symbolic link as described in the steps that follow.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product — ESX Server or GSX Server — on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Use the Expert installer.
5. In the partitioning step, unless you have special requirements, it is all right to let Mandrake Linux auto-allocate the space.
6. When selecting a boot loader, use LILO with text menu. Do not use the graphical version of LILO. It causes the virtual machine to hang.
7. On the Select a Graphic Card screen, choose Other—Generic VGA compatible.
8. Near the end of the installation, after files have been copied, you reach the monitor setup screen. Choose Super VGA, 800x600 @ 56 Hz.
9. When the installer asks whether to start X when you reboot, answer No.

This completes basic installation of the Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 guest operating system.
**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

### To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

---

**NOTE** With a Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 guest, you should install VMware Tools from the Linux console. Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools and set up a symbolic link to the XFree86 configuration file.

### Setting Up a Symbolic Link to XFree86

Be sure you are logged on as root (`su -`), and then take the following steps to set up a symbolic link to the correct XFree86 configuration file.

```
cd /etc
ln -s /etc/X11/XF86Config.vm XF86Config
```

Use the `startx` command to start your X server.

---

**Known Issues**

### Installation of Mandrake Linux 8.0 Hangs

Installation of Mandrake Linux 8.0 sometimes hangs at running `/sbin/loader` for no apparent reason. The hang is caused by a bug in early versions of the 2.4 Linux kernel. The bug has been fixed in kernel 2.4.5. Distributions based on this kernel should install without problems.

For earlier 2.4-series kernels, a workaround is available. Although the Linux kernel bug is not related to CD-ROM drives, the workaround involves changing a configuration setting for the virtual DVD/CD-ROM drive.

Power off the virtual machine and close the virtual machine window. Open the virtual machine's configuration file (`.vmx` file on a Windows host or `.cfg` file on a Linux host) in a text editor and add the following line:

```
cdrom.minvintime=100
```

Save the file. Now you should be able to install the guest operating system as described above. After you finish installing the guest operating system, remove this setting from the configuration file, as it might have a performance impact.
Shutting Down Mandrake Linux 8.0

The shutdown process in the guest operating system might hang when shutting down the network interface because of the way the Mandrake Linux 8.0 shutdown script handles dhcpcd. This problem does not occur with Mandrake Linux 8.1 guests.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Novell Linux Desktop 9

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Novell Linux Desktop 9 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Novell Linux Desktop 9:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Novell Linux Desktop 9 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **VMware ACE**
  Novell Linux Desktop 9 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- **VMware Server**
  Novell Linux Desktop 9 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- **VMware Fusion**
  Novell Linux Desktop 9 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 2 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Novell Linux Desktop 9 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Novell Linux Desktop distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Novell Linux Desktop 9 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.
NOTE: With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Novell Linux Desktop 9 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Novell Linux Desktop 9.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, use the arrow keys to select text mode, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. During final configuration, after all packages are installed, do not perform the Internet connection test.
5. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.
6. If you might copy or move this virtual machine, make the change described in “Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine” on page 280.

This completes basic installation of the Novell Linux Desktop 9 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`. 
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

```
alias ipv6 off
alias net-pf-10 off
```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine**

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Web site. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).
Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Oracle Enterprise Linux 5

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Oracle Enterprise Linux 5:

- VMware Workstation
  - Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    Update Support
    - Oracle Enterprise Linux 5.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    - Oracle Enterprise Linux 5.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Oracle Enterprise Linux 5:

- VMware Workstation
  - Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    Update Support
    - Oracle Enterprise Linux 5.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    - Oracle Enterprise Linux 5.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 in a virtual machine is to use the standard distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

When creating the virtual machine, be sure to select the LSI Logic SCSI adapter. Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 does not include a driver for the BusLogic SCSI adapter.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** Be sure the virtual machine is configured with at least 512MB of memory. If the virtual machine has less than 512MB of memory, Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 presents an error message as it loads certain VMware drivers.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Oracle Enterprise Linux 5.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4 Do not select Virtualization Option during the installation. Refer to knowledge base article 9134325 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/9134325 for more information.

5 Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the defaults.

You might see a warning that begins “The partition table on device <devicename> was unreadable. To create new partitions it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.” This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted.

6 Click Yes to partition the drive.

This completes basic installation of the Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1 If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2 In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:

    alias ipv6 off
    alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address in a key configuration file. This can cause errors when the virtual machine's MAC address changes. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by removing a line from the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

1 Make a backup copy of the file /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0, and then open it in a text editor.

2 Remove the line that begins with HwAddr.

3 Restart eth0.
Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Advanced Platform – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Desktop – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Server – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update Support
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **Additional Support**
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Advanced Platform, Desktop – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  - Advanced Platform – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Desktop – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Server – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Update Support
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  - Advanced Platform – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Desktop – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Update Support
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1**

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop with Workstation option – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Server – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Update Support

- **Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1**
  - Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1003374. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003374.), 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop – ESX 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1003374. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003374.), 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Server – ESX 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1003374. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003374.), 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- **Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2**
  - Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop with Workstation option – ESX 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Server – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- **Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3**
  - Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop with Workstation option – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Server – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1, and 5.2 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. OSPs also provide support for 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf
- pvscsi storage adapter – supports all Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 releases
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 releases

Support Considerations

- To avoid a read-only file system issue with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.

**VMware Fusion**

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Advanced Platform – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Desktop – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Server – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **Update Support**
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **Additional Support**
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Advanced Platform, Desktop – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Advanced Platform – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Desktop – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Server – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **Update Support**
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Advanced Platform – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Desktop – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **Update Support**
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **Additional Support**
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Desktop – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Desktop with Workstation option – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Server – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- **Update Support**
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1
    - Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1003374. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003374.), 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - Desktop – ESX 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1003374. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003374.), 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Server – ESX 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1003374. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003374.), 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2
  - Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop with Workstation option – ESX 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Server – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 (requires Patch ESX350-200803202-UG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003696.), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3
  - Advanced Platform – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Desktop with Workstation option – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Server – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, 5.1, and 5.2 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. OSPs also provide support for 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.0 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf.
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 releases

Support Considerations
- To avoid a read-only file system issue with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.

- VMware Fusion
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
    - Update Support
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
    - Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.
When creating the virtual machine, be sure to select the LSI Logic SCSI adapter. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 does not include a driver for the BusLogic SCSI adapter. Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  Be sure the virtual machine is configured with at least 512MB of memory. If the virtual machine has less than 512MB of memory, Red Hat Enterprise Linux presents an error message as it loads certain VMware drivers.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Do not select Virtualization Option during the installation. Refer to knowledge base article 9134325 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/9134325 for more information.
5. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the Red Hat defaults. You might see a warning that begins "The partition table on device <devicename> was unreadable. To create new partitions it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive." This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted.
6. Click Yes to partition the drive.

This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 guest operating system.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

### IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE**  VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

### To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modprobe.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

On Some Linux Guests with SELinux Enforcing Mode Turned On, Uninstalling VMware Tools Makes the File System Read-Only

ESX 3.5 Update 3 or Update 4: This problem occurs only if you uninstall the version of VMware Tools that was included with ESX 3.5 Update 3 and only if the Linux distribution has SELinux (Security-Enhanced Linux) enforcing mode enabled, such as Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2. See knowledgebase article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008090 for more information.

PAE Message During Installation

VMware Workstation 5.x and 6.x: If you are installing the guest operating system on a VMware Workstation, 5.0 or lower, on a host computer that has PAE technology, you might get an error message. The error message indicates the guest operating system is trying to use PAE. Discontinue the installation process if this occurs, and enable PAE for the affected virtual machine.

To enable PAE for the virtual machine
1. Make sure the virtual machine is powered off.
2. Edit the configuration (.vmx) file for the virtual machine by adding the following line to the file:
   ```
   paevm="true"
   ```
3. Power on the virtual machine and install the guest operating system.

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address in a key configuration file. This can cause errors when the virtual machine's MAC address changes. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by removing a line from the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

1. Make a backup copy of the file /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0, and then open it in a text editor.
2. Remove the line that begins with HwAddr.
3. Restart eth0.

SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.
During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Advanced Server (AS) – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Enterprise Server (ES) – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Workstation (WS) – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Update Support

  - Update 1 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update 2 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update 3 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update 4 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update 5 – Workstation 6.0.1
  - Update 6 – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update 7 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support

  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Advanced Server (AS), Enterprise Server (ES), Workstation (WS) – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2 (Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger does not support Update 6 on Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2)

  Support Considerations

  - The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517).

- **VMware ACE**

  Advanced Server (AS) – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

  Enterprise Server (ES) – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

  Workstation (WS) – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

  Update Support

  - Update 7 – ACE 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware GSX Server**

Advanced Server (AS) – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1
Enterprise Server (ES) – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1
Workstation (WS) – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware Server**

Advanced Server (AS) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
Enterprise Server (ES) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
Workstation (WS) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

Update Support

- Update 1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 4 – experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 5 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware ESX Server**

Advanced Server (AS) – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Enterprise Server (ES) – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Workstation (WS) – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

- Update 1 – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 2 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 3 – ESX 2.5.3 (requires Upgrade Patch 3. See http://vmware.com/support/esx25/doc/esx-253-200607-patch.html), 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 4 – ESX 2.5.3 (requires Upgrade Patch 3. See http://vmware.com/support/esx25/doc/esx-253-200607-patch.html), 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 5 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 6 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 7 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 8 – ESX 2.5.5, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 and Updates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. OSPs also provide support for 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 8 on ESX 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf

Support Considerations
- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.
  - SCSI adapter support
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5; ESX Server 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, and 2.5.5 support only the BusLogic SCSI adapter on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.
    - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 6 and Update 7; ESX Server 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, and 2.5.5 support both the LSI Logic and BusLogic SCSI adapter on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 6 and Update 7.
    - VMware provides a separate driver to support the BusLogic SCSI adapter. For instructions on downloading and installing the BusLogic driver, see www.vmware.com/download/esx/drivers_tools.html.
    - VMware ESX Server 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, and 3.0.3 support only the LSI Logic SCSI adapter for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.
  - To avoid a read-only file system issue with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 3 or Update 4 on ESX Server 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, or 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 5. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.

- VMware Fusion
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support
- Update 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
- Update 6 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Support Considerations
- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.
64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Advanced Server (AS) – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Enterprise Server (ES) – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Workstation (WS) – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Update Support

- Update 1 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 2 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 3 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 4 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 5 – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 6 – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 7 – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Advanced Server (AS), Enterprise Server (ES), Workstation (WS) – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2 (Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger does not support Update 6 on Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2)

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517).

- **VMware ACE**
  - Advanced Server (AS) – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Enterprise Server (ES) – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Workstation (WS) – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517).

- **VMware Server**
  - Advanced Server (AS) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - Enterprise Server (ES) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - Workstation (WS) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
Update Support

- Update 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 4 – experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 5 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware ESX Server**

Advanced Server (AS) – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Enterprise Server (ES) – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Workstation (WS) – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

- Update 1 – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 2 – ESX 3.0 (experimental support), 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 3 – ESX 3.0 (experimental support), 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 4 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 5 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 6 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 7 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 8 – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSP) – provide support for 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 and Updates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. OSPs also provide support for 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 8 on ESX 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

- VMware ESX Server 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, and 3.0.3 support only the LSI Logic SCSI adapter for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.

- To avoid a read-only file system issue with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 3 or Update 4 on ESX Server 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, and 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 5. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.
VMware Fusion
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Update 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Update Support
- Update 4 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
- Update 6 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Support Considerations
- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

General Installation Notes
Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.
The easiest method of installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

VMware Workstation, VMware ACE, VMware GSX Server: When creating the virtual machine, be sure to select the LSI Logic SCSI adapter. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 does not include a driver for the BusLogic SCSI adapter.

NOTE Be sure the virtual machine is configured with at least 256MB of memory. If the virtual machine has less than 256MB of memory, Red Hat Enterprise Linux presents an error message as it loads certain VMware drivers.

NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps
NOTE Pay particular attention to the notes in Step 4 about how to avoid installing an inappropriate kernel.

1 Insert the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2 Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.
3 Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4 VMware GSX Server: In the Package Group Selection screen, choose Software Development and select individual packages. In the Individual Package Selection screen, use the arrow keys to move down to System Environment/Kernel and press Enter. Be sure that kernel-smp is deselected (no asterisk should appear between the brackets). The SMP kernel is not supported in a GSX Server virtual machine. You do not need to change any other selections.
5 Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the Red Hat defaults.
6 You might see a warning that begins “The partition table on device <devicename> was unreadable. To create new partitions it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.” This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted.

Click Yes to partition the drive.

7 **VMware GSX Server:** If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

**VMware ESX Server:** If you are using the vlance network adapter in your virtual machine and your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually. If you are using the vmnet network adapter in your virtual machine, use the network configuration tools in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 to configure your network connection after you finish installing the guest operating system.

This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

---

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1 If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2 In the file /etc/modprobe.conf, add the following lines:

```
alias ipv6 off
alias net-pf-10 off
```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**PAE Message During Installation**

**VMware Workstation 5.0:** If you are installing the guest operating system on a VMware Workstation, 5.0 or lower, on a host computer that has PAE technology, you might get an error message. The error message indicates the guest operating system is trying to use PAE. Discontinue the installation process if this occurs, and enable PAE for the affected virtual machine.
To enable PAE for the virtual machine

1. Make sure the virtual machine is powered off.
2. Edit the configuration (.vmx) file for the virtual machine by adding the following line to the file:
   
   `paevm="true"`
3. Power on the virtual machine and install the guest operating system

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

ESX Server 3.x: Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address in a key configuration file. This can cause errors when the virtual machine's MAC address changes. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by removing a line from the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

1. Make a backup copy of the file `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0`, and then open it in a text editor.
2. Remove the line that begins with `HWAddr`.
3. Restart eth0.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

VMware GSX Server: On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.
This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.

**Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Update 2 and Update 3 Guests Displayed with Incorrect Operating System Type in Virtual Infrastructure Client**

**ESX Server 3.x**: ESX 3.x virtual machines running Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 (AS, ES, WS) Update 3, with VMware Tools running, are shown in the Virtual Infrastructure Client as having Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 as the guest operating system type. ESX 3.x virtual machines running Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 (AS, ES, WS) Update 2, with VMware Tools running, are shown in the Virtual Infrastructure Client as having Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2 as the guest operating system type. This incorrect display is harmless and does not affect the proper operation of the virtual machine.
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Advanced Server (AS) – Workstation 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Enterprise Server (ES) – Workstation 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Workstation (WS) – Workstation 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Update Support

- Update 4 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 5 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 6 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 7 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 8 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517).

- **VMware ACE**
  - Advanced Server (AS) – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Enterprise Server (ES) – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Workstation (WS) – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

Update Support

- Update 3 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- Update 4 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware GSX Server**

Advanced Server (AS) – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
Enterprise Server (ES) – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
Workstation (WS) – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

Update Support

- Update 4 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware Server**

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

Update Support

- Update 1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 4 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 5 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 6 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 7 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- Update 8 – experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

Additonal Support

- SMP– 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware ESX Server**

Advanced Server (AS) – ESX 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Enterprise Server (ES) – ESX 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Workstation (WS) – ESX 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

- Update 1– ESX 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Guest Operating System Installation Guide

- Update 2 – ESX 2.1 (with Virtual SMP), 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 3 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 4 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 5 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 6 – ESX 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 7 – ESX 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 8 – ESX 2.5.3 (requires Upgrade Patch 3. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517), 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Update 9 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Support Considerations

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugenem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

VMware Fusion

Red Hat Enterprise Linux, Update 8 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Update Support

- Update 8 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
- Update 9 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

A 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 guest (without any updates) and a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 guest Update 1 do not support more than 4GB of memory on VMware virtual hardware.

The following VMware products support 64-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3:

- VMware Workstation

  Advanced Server (AS) – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Enterprise Server (ES) – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Workstation (WS) – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Update Support

- Update 4 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Update 5 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

- **Update 6** – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **Update 7** – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **Update 8** – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

**Additional Support**

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

**Support Considerations**

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware ACE**

Advanced Server (AS) – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
Enterprise Server (ES) – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
Workstation (WS) – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

**Update Support**

- **Update 3** – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- **Update 4** – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

**Support Considerations**

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware Server**

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**Update Support**

- **Update 6** – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- **Update 7** – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
- **Update 8** – experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**Additional Support**

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**Support Considerations**

- The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 hugemem kernel is not supported. See knowledge base article 8964517 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/8964517.

**VMware ESX Server**

Advanced Server (AS) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Enterprise Server (ES) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Workstation (WS) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

**Update Support**

- **Update 1** – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE  Be sure the virtual machine is configured with at least 256MB of memory. If the virtual machine has less than 256MB of memory, Red Hat Enterprise Linux presents an error message as it loads certain VMware drivers.

NOTE  With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.
NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

### Installation Steps

NOTE Pay particular attention to the notes in Step 6 about how to avoid installing an inappropriate kernel.

1. Insert the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.
   
   You must install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 using the text mode installer, which you can choose when you first boot the installer. At the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 CD boot prompt, you are offered a number of choices, including the following:
   
   To install or upgrade Red Hat Linux ... in graphical mode ...
   
   To install or upgrade ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER>...
   
   ... Use the function keys listed below ...
   
   To choose the text mode installer, type text and press Enter.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Choose the language and keyboard, and then in the Installation Type screen, choose either Advanced Server or Custom for the installation type.
5. In the Mouse Selection screen, choose Generic – 3 Button Mouse (PS/2) and select the Emulate 3 Buttons option for three-button mouse support in the virtual machine. If you have a wheel mouse, you can choose Generic Wheel Mouse (PS/2).
6. **VMware GSX Server only:** In the Package Group Selection screen, choose Software Development and Select individual packages. In the Individual Package Selection screen, use the arrow keys to move down to System Environment/Kernel and press Enter. Be sure that kernel-smp is deselected (no asterisk should appear between the brackets). The SMP kernel is not supported in a GSX Server virtual machine. You do not need to change any other selections.
7. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the Red Hat defaults.
8. You might see a warning that says:

   The partition table on device sda was unreadable. To create new partitions, it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive. Would you like to initialize this drive?

   This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted. Select the Yes button and press Enter. Also note that sda appears in the message as the device name if the virtual disk in question is a SCSI disk; if the virtual disk is an IDE drive, hda appears in the message as the device name instead.
9. **VMware GSX Server:** If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

   **VMware ESX Server, VMware VirtualCenter, or vCenter Server:** If you are using the vlance network adapter in your virtual machine and your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually. If you are using the vmxnet network adapter in your virtual machine, use the network configuration tools in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 to configure your network connection after you finish installing the guest operating system.
This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340). Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Forcing the Installer to Read the Second Installation CD**

**VMware Workstation, VMware GSX Server:** The Red Hat installer might fail to read the second installation CD correctly if the CD drive in your virtual machine is set up using the defaults.

The specific failure message depends on the set of packages you choose to install. In many cases, the first package the installer tries to read from the second CD is the XPDF package, so the error message reports a problem with `xpdf-<version number>`.

**To force the installer to read the second CD correctly**

1. When the installer asks for the second CD, remove the first CD from the drive and leave the drive empty.
2. Tell the installer to continue. It closes the CD drive tray, and then gives an error message when it finds no CD.
3. Insert the second CD and tell the installer to continue. It should read the second CD correctly and installation should continue with no problems.

**PAE Message During Installation**

**VMware Workstation 5.0:** If you are installing the guest operating system on a VMware Workstation, 5.0 or lower, on a host computer that has PAE technology, you might get an error message. The error message indicates the guest operating system is trying to use PAE. Discontinue the installation process if this occurs, and enable PAE for the affected virtual machine.
To enable PAE for the virtual machine

1. Make sure the virtual machine is powered off.
2. Edit the configuration (.vmx) file for the virtual machine by adding the following line to the file:
   ```
   paevm="true"
   ```
3. Power on the virtual machine and install the guest operating system.

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

**ESX Server 3.x:** Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

**VMware GSX Server:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.

Installation on Uniprocessor Virtual Machines with More than 4GB of Memory

**VMware ESX Server 3.x:** If your virtual machine is configured as a uniprocessor system with more than 4GB of RAM, when you install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3, the huge memory kernel might fail to install. As a result, the guest operating system will see only 4 GB of memory. To work around this problem, reboot the virtual machine and install the huge memory kernel manually, using the RPM installer.
**Message About “Tainted” Driver**

VMware ESX Server, VMware VirtualCenter, or vCenter Server: With Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 Update 6 and later, when the system loads the vmxnet networking driver, it reports that the driver is tainted. This does not mean that there is anything wrong with the driver. It simply indicates that this is a proprietary driver, not licensed under the GNU General Public License.

**X Windows System Fails to Start in Virtual Machine If Default Depth for Display Is Set to 24**

ESX Server 3.x: In a virtual machine running Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 Update 7, if you choose the setup default of 24 for display depth, when you attempt to start the X windows system (with the startx command), the error message No screens found is displayed. You can work around this problem in either of the following ways:

- Install VMware Tools, or
- Manually edit the file /etc/X11/XF86config, setting the default depth for the display to 8

**Removing the Disk from a Virtual Machine with a RHEL3 Guest Operating System without Informing the Guest Causes the Virtual Machine to Fail**

For 32-bit a virtual machine with a RHEL3 guest operating system and a Bus Logic Driver, hot removing the disk without informing the guest OS about the disk removal causes the virtual machine operation to fail. To work around this problem, remove the disk from the guest explicitly.

**To remove the disk from an RHEL3 virtual machine explicitly**

1. Get the HOST CHAN ID and LUN numbers for the device you want to remove from /proc/scsi/scsi.
2. Run the following command in the RHEL console:
   ```plaintext
echo "scsi remove-single-device HOST CHAN DEV LUN" > /proc/scsi/scsi
```
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Advanced Server (AS) – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Enterprise Server (ES) – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Workstation (WS) – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Update Support
  
  - Update 6 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  - Update 7 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  Advanced Server (AS) – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Enterprise Server (ES) – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Workstation (WS) – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  
  Update Support
  
  - Update 6 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  Advanced Server (AS) – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  
  Enterprise Server (ES) – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  
  Workstation (WS) – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  
  Update Support
  
  - Update 6 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
VMware ESX Server

Advanced Server (AS) – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Enterprise Server (ES) – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Workstation (WS) – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

- Update 6 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3
- Update 7 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

VMware Fusion

Advanced Server (AS) – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Enterprise Server (ES) – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Workstation (WS) – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 WS on VMware ESX Server: When you install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 WS in a virtual machine on an ESX Server, use Update 6 or higher. This eliminates conflicts with the network and SCSI adapters and installation problems on a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 WS guest operating system.

If you do not install Update 6 or higher, use one of the following configurations for the network and SCSI adapters:

- vlance network adapter—Use an LSI Logic SCSI adapter.
- vmxnet network adapter—Use an LSI Logic SCSI adapter or BusLogic adapter.

**NOTE** You should not run the X server that is installed when you set up Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

**NOTE** Unless you are running a multiprocessor virtual machine under VMware ESX Server, pay particular attention to the notes in Step 6 about how to avoid installing an inappropriate kernel.

1. Insert the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1.
   
   You must install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 using the text mode installer, which you can choose when you first boot the installer. At the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 CD boot prompt, you are offered a number of choices, including the following:

   - To install or upgrade Red Hat Linux ... in graphical mode ...
   - To install or upgrade ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER> ...
   - Use the function keys listed below ...

   To choose the text mode installer, type **text** and press Enter.

3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.

4. Choose the language and keyboard, and then in the Installation Type screen, choose either **Advanced Server** or **Custom** for the installation type.

5. In the Mouse Selection screen, choose **Generic – 3 Button Mouse (PS/2)** and select the **Emulate 3 Buttons** option for three-button mouse support in the virtual machine. If you have a wheel mouse, you can choose **Generic Wheel Mouse (PS/2)**.

6. **VMware GSX Server only:** In the Package Group Selection screen, choose **Software Development** and select individual packages. In the Individual Package Selection screen, use the arrow keys to move down to **System Environment/Kernel** and press **Enter**. Be sure that kernel-smp is deselected (no asterisk should appear between the brackets). The SMP kernel is not supported in a GSX Server virtual machine. You do not need to change any other selections.

   **VMware ESX Server, VirtualCenter, or vCenter Server if installing to an ESX Server machine without virtual SMP:** In the Individual Package Selection screen, use the arrow keys to move down to **System Environment/Kernel** and press **Enter**. Be sure that the following kernels are deselected (no asterisk should appear between the brackets):

   - kernel-enterprise
   - kernel-smp
   - kernel-summit

   **VMware ESX Server, VirtualCenter, or vCenter Server if installing to an ESX Server machine with virtual SMP:** In the Individual Package Selection screen, use the arrow keys to move down to System Environment/Kernel and press **Enter**.

   - If you are installing a multiprocessor virtual machine, be sure kernel-smp is selected.
   - If you are installing a uniprocessor virtual machine, be sure the following kernels are deselected: kernel-enterprise, kernel-smp and kernel-summit.

   For additional information on using uniprocessor and multiprocessor kernels with a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 virtual machine under VMware ESX Server, see the release notes at [www.vmware.com/support/esx21/doc/releasenotes_esx213.html](http://www.vmware.com/support/esx21/doc/releasenotes_esx213.html).

7. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the Red Hat defaults.

8. You might see a warning that says:

   The partition table on device sda was unreadable. To create new partitions, it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive. Would you like to initialize this drive?
This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted. Select the **Yes** button and press **Enter**. Also note that `sda` appears in the message as the device name if the virtual disk in question is a SCSI disk; if the virtual disk is an IDE drive, `hda` appears in the message as the device name instead.

9 If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option **Use bootp/dhcp**. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

10 In the Video Card Configuration screen, choose **Generic SVGA**.

This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```bash
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

### To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```bash
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Forcing the Installer to Read the Second Installation CD**

**VMware Workstation, VMware GSX Server**: The Red Hat installer might fail to read the second installation CD correctly if the CD drive in your virtual machine is set up using the defaults.

The specific failure message depends on the set of packages you choose to install. In many cases, the first package the installer tries to read from the second CD is the XPDF package, so the error message reports a problem with `xpdf-<version number>`.

**To force the installer to read the second CD correctly**

1. When the installer asks for the second CD, remove the first CD from the drive and leave the drive empty.
2. Tell the installer to continue. It closes the CD drive tray, and then gives an error message when it finds no CD.
3. Insert the second CD and tell the installer to continue. It should read the second CD correctly and installation should continue with no problems.

**Mouse Does Not Function Properly**

The mouse does not function properly when you install VMware Tools on a Red Hat Enterprise Linux WS 2.1, Update 6 guest operating system in a virtual machine with either a single or multiple virtual processor on ESX 3.0.2 or 3.0.3. The VMware mouse is not supported by Linux guest operating systems running versions of X that are 4.2 or earlier.

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

**VMware GSX Server:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.

**Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020).

**ESX Server 3.x:** Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.
Red Hat Linux 9.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Linux 9.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Linux 9.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 – Workstation 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Red Hat Linux 9.0 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5

- **VMware Fusion**
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read "General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Linux 9.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Linux 9.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE You should not run the X server that is installed when you set up Red Hat Linux 9.0. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Linux 9.0.
NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Red Hat Linux 9.0 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Linux 9.0.

   You must install Red Hat Linux 9.0 using the text mode installer, which you can choose when you first boot the installer. At the Red Hat Linux 9.0 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:
   
   To install or upgrade Red Hat Linux ... in graphical mode ...
   To install or upgrade ... in text mode, type: linux text <ENTER>.
   Use the function keys listed below ...

   To choose the text mode installer, type `linux text` and press Enter.

   **NOTE** If you attempt to use the graphical installer, it fails and launches the text mode installer.

3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.

4. Choose the language and keyboard.

5. In the Mouse Selection screen, choose **Generic – 3 Button Mouse (PS/2)** and select the **Emulate 3 Buttons** option for three-button mouse support in the virtual machine. If you have a wheel mouse, you can choose **Generic Wheel Mouse (PS/2)**.

6. In the Installation Type screen, choose either **Server** or **Workstation** for the installation type.

7. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the Red Hat defaults.

8. You might see a warning that says:

   **Bad partition table. The partition table on device sda is corrupted. To create new partitions, it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.**

   This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted. Select the **Initialize** button and press **Enter**. Also note that `sda` appears in the message as the device name if the virtual disk in question is a SCSI disk; if the virtual disk is an IDE drive, `hda` appears in the message as the device name instead.

9. If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option **Use bootp/dhcp**. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

10. In the Video Card Configuration screen, choose **Skip X Configuration**.
    This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.
IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1 If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to
   NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2 In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   
   
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   
   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

NOTE When you are installing VMware Tools, the configuration program asks you to specify a resolution for the guest operating system's display. Be sure to set the resolution to 1152 x 864 or lower. If you set a higher resolution, the guest operating system instead switches to a default resolution of 800 x 600.

Known Issues

Forcing the Installer to Read the Second Installation CD

VMware Workstation, VMware ACE or VMware GSX Server: The Red Hat installer might fail to read the second installation CD correctly if the CD drive in your virtual machine is set up using the defaults.

The specific failure message depends on the set of packages you choose to install. In many cases, the first package the installer tries to read from the second CD is the XPDF package, so the error message reports a problem with xpdf-<version number>.

To force the installer to read the second CD correctly

1 When the installer asks for the second CD, remove the first CD from the drive and leave the drive empty.

2 Tell the installer to continue. It closes the CD drive tray, and then gives an error message when it finds no CD.

3 Insert the second CD and tell the installer to continue. It should read the second CD correctly and installation should continue with no problems.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server: On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
INIT Errors, Slow or Poor Performance

VMware GSX Server: While installing the Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest operating system, you might notice that the guest performs poorly or slowly, or you might see INIT errors when you first boot the guest. To work around this issue and install the guest more easily, pass the nosysinfo option when you boot the Linux kernel at the beginning of the installation. At the boot: prompt in the guest, type text nosysinfo.

After you install the guest operating system, if you notice that the virtual machine runs slowly or if you still see INIT errors, you can modify your boot loader to always use the option when the guest operating system boots. Choose the steps for your boot loader—choose GRUB or LILO.

To modify your GRUB boot loader
1 In a text editor, edit /etc/grub.conf.
2 Look for the following section in the file. Note that you might see a different kernel instead of the 2.4.20-8 kernel shown below.
   
   title Red Hat Linux (2.4.20-8)
   root (hd0,0)
   kernel /vmlinuz-2.4.20-8 ro root=LABEL=/
   initrd ....

3 At the end of the kernel /vmlinuz-2.4.20-8 ro root=LABEL=/ line, add nosysinfo.
4 Save and close the file. You can now boot the guest.
5 Restart the guest operating system.

NOTE If you are not confident with changing this configuration file, copy the above four line section and change the title from Red Hat Linux to RH Linux Guest, and add nosysinfo to the end of the line beginning with kernel in the newly created section. At boot time, you can choose to boot either the RH Linux Guest for optimal performance or Red Hat Linux for your original setup.

To modify your LILO boot loader
1 In a text editor, edit /etc/lilo.conf.
2 Look for the following line
   append="......"
3 Add nosysinfo to the line like this:
   append="...... nosysinfo"
4 If there is no append= line in /etc/lilo.conf, add the following line:
   append=“nosysinfo”
   at the beginning of /etc/lilo.conf, before the first image= or other= directive.
5 Save and close the file.
6 Run the lilo command again so your changes can take effect.
7 Restart the guest operating system.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.
Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.

Getting a DHCP Address in a Red Hat Linux 9.0 Virtual Machine

When a Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest operating system tries to get a DHCP address, the attempt might fail with an error message indicating that the link is down. On ESX Server, this happens only if you are using the vLance driver for your network connection.

To work around this problem, become root (su -) and use a text editor to edit the following files in the guest operating system. If only one of these files exists, make the change for that file only.

/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth<n>
/etc/sysconfig/networking/devices/ifcfg-eth<n>

In both cases, <n> is the number of the Ethernet adapter—for example, eth0.

Add the following section to each of these two files:

check_link_down () {
    return 1;
}

Then run the command ifup eth[n] (where [n] is the number of the Ethernet adapter) or restart the guest operating system.

Message About “Tainted” Driver

VMware ESX Server, VMware VirtualCenter, or vCenter Server: When a Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest operating system loads the vmxnet networking driver, it reports that the driver is tainted. This does not mean that there is anything wrong with the driver. It simply indicates that this is a proprietary driver, not licensed under the GNU General Public License.

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.
Red Hat Linux 8.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Linux 8.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Linux 8.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Red Hat Linux 8.0 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Red Hat Linux 8.0 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Red Hat Linux 8.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 8.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Red Hat Linux 8.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 8.0 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Linux 8.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Linux 8.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** You should not run the X server that is installed when you set up Red Hat Linux 8.0. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Linux 8.0.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.
NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Red Hat Linux 8.0 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Linux 8.0.
   You must install Red Hat Linux 8.0 using the text mode installer, which you can choose when you first boot the installer. At the Red Hat Linux 8.0 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:
   - To install or upgrade Red Hat Linux ... in graphical mode ...
   - To install or upgrade ... in text mode, type: linux text <ENTER>. Use the function keys listed below ...
   - To choose the text mode installer, type linux text and press Enter.

NOTE If you attempt to use the graphical installer, it fails and launches the text mode installer.

3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. Choose the language and keyboard, and then in the Installation Type screen, choose either Server or Workstation for the installation type.
5. In the Mouse Selection screen, choose Generic – 3 Button Mouse (PS/2) and select the Emulate 3 Buttons option for three-button mouse support in the virtual machine. If you have a wheel mouse, you can choose Generic Wheel Mouse (PS/2).
6. You might see a warning that says:
   
   Bad partition table. The partition table on device sda is corrupted. To create new partitions, it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.
   
   This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted. Select the Initialize button and press Enter. Also note that sda appears in the message as the device name if the virtual disk in question is a SCSI disk; if the virtual disk is an IDE drive, hda appears in the message as the device name instead.
7. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen or partition the virtual disk manually if you do not want to use the Red Hat defaults.
8. If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Linux 8.0 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server: On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.

Message About Tainted Driver

VMware ESX Server, VMware VirtualCenter, or vCenter Server: When a Red Hat Linux 8.0 guest operating system loads the vmxnet networking driver, it reports that the driver is tainted. This does not mean that there is anything wrong with the driver. It simply indicates that this is a proprietary driver, not licensed under the GNU General Public License.
Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.
Red Hat Linux 7.3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Linux 7.3 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Linux 7.3:

- VMware Workstation
  - Red Hat Linux 7.3 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  - Red Hat Linux 7.3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware GSX Server
  - Red Hat Linux 7.3 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- VMware Server
  - Red Hat Linux 7.3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- VMware ESX Server
  - Red Hat Linux 7.3 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Linux 7.3 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Linux 7.3 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE You should not run the X server that is installed when you set up Red Hat Linux 7.3. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Linux 7.3.

NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.
NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Red Hat Linux 7.3 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Linux 7.3.

   You must install Red Hat Linux 7.3 using the text mode installer, which you can choose when you first boot the installer. At the Red Hat Linux 7.3 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:

   To install or upgrade a system ... in graphical mode ...
   To install or upgrade a system ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER>.
   To enable expert mode, ...
   Use the function keys listed below ...

   To choose the text mode installer, type text and press Enter.

3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.

4. In the Mouse Selection screen, choose Generic – 3 Button Mouse (PS/2) and select the option Emulate 3 Buttons for three-button mouse support in the virtual machine.

5. Choose the language and keyboard, and then in the Installation Type screen, choose either Server or Workstation for the installation type.

6. You might see a warning that says:

   Bad partition table. The partition table on device sda is corrupted. To create new partitions, it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.

   This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted. Select the Initialize button and press Enter. Also note that sda appears in the message as the device name if the virtual disk in question is a SCSI disk; if the virtual disk is an IDE drive, hda appears in the message as the device name instead.

7. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen.

8. If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

9. In the Video Card Selection screen, choose any card from the list.

10. In the Video Card Configuration screen, choose Skip X Configuration.

   This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Linux 7.3 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

---

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**NOTE** When you start installing VMware Tools (by typing `./vmware-install.pl` in the `vmware-tools-distrib` directory), the following message appears:

`Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?`

If you plan to dual boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the `XF86Config-4.dist` file to `XF86Config-4.vm`. The latter file is used when dual booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.

---

**Known Issues**

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

**VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.
Red Hat Linux 7.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Linux 7.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Linux 7.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Red Hat Linux 7.2 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Red Hat Linux 7.2 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 7.2 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Red Hat Linux 7.2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 7.2 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Linux 7.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Linux 7.2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** You should not run the X server that is installed when you set up Red Hat Linux 7.2. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Linux 7.2.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.
NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1 Insert the Red Hat Linux 7.2 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

2 Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Linux 7.2.

You must install Red Hat Linux 7.2 using the text mode installer, which you can choose when you first boot the installer. At the Red Hat Linux 7.2 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:

To install or upgrade a system ... in graphical mode ...
To install or upgrade a system ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER>.
To enable expert mode, ...
Use the function keys listed below ...

To choose the text mode installer, type text followed by Enter.

3 Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.

4 Choose the language and keyboard, and then in the Installation Type screen, choose either Server or Workstation for the installation type.

A warning appears that says:

Bad partition table. The partition table on device sda is corrupted. To create new partitions, it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.

This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted. Click the Initialize button and press Enter. Also note that sda appears in the message as the device name if the virtual disk in question is a SCSI disk, if the virtual disk is an IDE drive, hda appears in the message as the device name instead.

5 Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen.

6 If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

7 In the Mouse Selection screen, choose Generic – 3 Button Mouse (PS/2) and select the option Emulate 3 Buttons for three-button mouse support in the virtual machine.

8 In the Video Card Selection screen, choose the default selection.

9 During the configuration of the X server, select the defaults and proceed through this section as quickly as possible, as this X server is replaced by an X server specific to your guest operating system when you install VMware Tools in this virtual machine.

10 Continue to the Starting X screen and click the Skip button to skip testing the configuration.

This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Linux 7.2 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Installation Hang**

Installation sometimes hangs at running `/sbin/loader` for no apparent reason. The hang is caused by a bug in early versions of the 2.4 Linux kernel. The bug has been fixed in kernel 2.4.5. Distributions based on this kernel should install without problems.

For earlier 2.4-series kernels, a workaround is available. Although the Linux kernel bug is not related to CD-ROM drives, the workaround involves changing a VMware configuration setting for the virtual DVD/CD-ROM drive.

Power off the virtual machine and close the virtual machine window. Open the virtual machine's configuration file (`.vmx` or `.cfg` file) in a text editor and add the following line:

```
cdrom.minvirtualtime=100
```

Save the file. Now you should be able to install the guest operating system as described above. After you finish installing the guest operating system, remove this setting from the configuration file, as it might have a performance impact.

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

**VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.
Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.

**Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020).
Red Hat Linux 7.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Linux 7.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Linux 7.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Red Hat Linux 7.1 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **VMware ACE**
  Red Hat Linux 7.1 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- **VMware GSX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 7.1 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
- **VMware Server**
  Red Hat Linux 7.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Linux 7.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Linux 7.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** You should not run the X server that is installed when you set up Red Hat Linux 7.1. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Linux 7.1.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the Red Hat Linux 7.1 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Linux 7.1.

   You must install Red Hat Linux 7.1 using the text mode installer, which you can choose when you first boot the installer. At the Red Hat Linux 7.1 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:

   To install or upgrade a system ... in graphical mode ...
   To install or upgrade a system ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER>.
   To enable expert mode, ... 
   Use the function keys listed below ...
   To choose the text mode installer, type text followed by Enter.

3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.

4. Choose the language and keyboard, and then in the Installation Type screen, choose either Server or Workstation for the installation type.

   A warning appears that says:

   Bad partition table. The partition table on device sda is corrupted. To create new partitions, it must be initialized, causing the loss of ALL DATA on the drive.

   This does not mean that anything is wrong with the hard drive on your physical computer. It simply means that the virtual hard drive in your virtual machine needs to be partitioned and formatted. Click the Initialize button and press Enter. Also note that sda appears in the message as the device name if the virtual disk in question is a SCSI disk; if the virtual disk is an IDE drive, hda appears in the message as the device name instead.

5. Allow automatic partitioning of the disk to occur in the Automatic Partitioning screen.

6. If your computer is connected to a LAN that provides DHCP support, in the Network Configuration screen, you can select the option Use bootp/dhcp. If you prefer, you can also set the networking parameters manually.

7. In the Mouse Selection screen, choose Generic – 3 Button Mouse (PS/2) and select the option Emulate 3 Buttons for three-button mouse support in the virtual machine.

8. In the Video Card Selection screen, choose the default selection.

9. During the configuration of the X server, select the defaults and proceed through this section as quickly as possible, as this X server is replaced by an X server specific to your guest operating system when you install VMware Tools in this virtual machine.

10. Continue to the Starting X screen and click the Skip button to skip testing the configuration.

   This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Linux 7.1 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Installation Hang

Installation sometimes hangs at running /sbin/loader for no apparent reason. The hang is caused by a bug in early versions of the 2.4 Linux kernel. The bug has been fixed in kernel 2.4.5. Distributions based on this kernel should install without problems.

For earlier 2.4-series kernels, a workaround is available. Although the Linux kernel bug is not related to CD-ROM drives, the workaround involves changing a VMware configuration setting for the virtual DVD/CD-ROM drive.

Power off the virtual machine and close the virtual machine window. Open the virtual machine's configuration file (.vmx file on a Windows host or .cfg file on a Linux host) in a text editor and add the following line:

```
cdrom.minvirtualtime=100
```

Save the file. Now you should be able to install the guest operating system as described above. After you finish installing the guest operating system, remove this setting from the configuration file, as it might have a performance impact.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Red Hat Linux 7.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Linux 7.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Linux 7.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Red Hat Linux 7.0 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Red Hat Linux 7.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Red Hat Linux 7.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Red Hat Linux 7.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion**
  Red Hat Linux 7.0 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Linux 7.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Linux 7.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the Red Hat Linux 7.0 text mode installation, a standard XFree86 version 4 server (without support for VMware SVGA or standard VGA) will be installed. Do not run that X server. Instead, to get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Linux 7.0.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.
NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Red Hat Linux 7.0 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Linux 7.0.

   We recommend you install the operating system with the text mode installer. At the Red Hat 7.0 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:

   To install or upgrade a system ... in graphical mode ...
   To install or upgrade a system ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER>.
   To enable expert mode, ...
   Use the function keys listed below ...

   Choose the text mode installer by typing text followed by Enter.

3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine. Be sure to make the choices outlined in the following steps.
4. In Video Card Selection choose Generic VGA compatible, and then click OK.
5. Near the end of the installation, after files have been copied, you reach the Monitor Setup screen. Choose Generic Standard VGA, 640x480 @ 60 Hz, and then click OK.
6. At the Video Memory screen, choose 256Kb, and then click OK.
7. At the Clockchip Configuration screen, choose No Clockchip Setting (recommended), which is the default, and then click OK.
8. At the Probe for Clocks screen, click Skip.
9. At the Select Video Modes screen, don’t choose anything. Just click OK.
10. At the Starting X screen, click Skip.

   **NOTE** This is the most important step. Clicking OK runs the XFree86 version 4 server, which fails, and the installer aborts.

This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Linux 7.0 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**NOTE** With a Red Hat Linux 7.0 guest, you should install VMware Tools from the Linux console. Do not start X until you have installed VMware Tools.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Red Hat Linux 6.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Red Hat Linux 6.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Red Hat Linux 6.2:

- VMware GSX Server

  Red Hat Linux 6.2 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Red Hat Linux 6.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Red Hat distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Red Hat Linux 6.2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created a new virtual machine and configured it using the New Virtual Machine Wizard (on Windows hosts) or Configuration Wizard (on Linux hosts).

**CAUTION** Red Hat Linux 6.2 runs on Intel core processors. However, it does not run on Xeon processors that are branded Xeon, with no qualifier, or Xeon-MP (Pentium III Xeon processors are OK).

**NOTE** Due to VGA performance issues installing Red Hat 6.2 with the graphics mode installer, we highly recommend you install the operating system with the text mode installer. At the Red Hat 6.0.1 or 6.2 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:

To install or upgrade a system ... in graphical mode ...  
To install or upgrade a system ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER>.  
To enable expert mode, ...  

Use the function keys listed below ...

Choose the text mode installer by typing **text** followed by Enter.

**NOTE** During the Red Hat Linux 6.x installation, a standard VGA16 X server (without support for the VMware X server) is installed. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, you should install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Red Hat Linux 6.x.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or GSX Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Red Hat Linux 6.2 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Red Hat Linux 6.2.

We recommend you install the operating system with the text mode installer. At the Red Hat 6.2 CD boot prompt, you are offered the following choices:
To install or upgrade a system ... in graphical mode ...  
To install or upgrade a system ... in text mode, type: text <ENTER>.  
To enable expert mode, ...  
Use the function keys listed below ...  
Choose the text mode installer by typing text followed by Enter.

3 Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

**NOTE** If the virtual machine’s Ethernet adapter has been enabled, the installation program auto-detects and loads the AMD PC/Net 32 driver (no command line parameter is necessary to load the driver).

**NOTE** The text mode installer in Red Hat Linux 6.2 presents a Hostname Configuration screen. If you are installing this guest with DHCP in a virtual machine with host-only networking, do not specify a hostname. Just respond OK and continue. (Specifying a host name will cause an installer error later.) At the next screen—Network Configuration—respond OK to use the default: Use bootp/dhcp.

4 During the Linux installation, select the standard VGA16 X server.
5 In the Choose a Card screen, select the **Generic VGA compatible/Generic VGA** card from the list.
6 In the Monitor Setup screen, select **Generic Monitor** from the list.
7 Select the **Probe** button from the Screen Configuration dialog box.
8 Select **OK** from the Starting X dialog box. After Linux is installed, the generic X server is replaced with the accelerated X server included in the VMware Tools package when you install VMware Tools.
9 Finish installing Red Hat Linux 6.2 as you would on a physical machine.

At this point Red Hat 6.2 boots and a login screen appears.

This completes basic installation of the Red Hat Linux 7.0 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1 If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2 In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver
On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Sun Java Desktop System 2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Sun Java Desktop System 2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Sun Java Desktop System 2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Sun Java Desktop System 2 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Sun Java Desktop System 2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Sun Java Desktop System 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Sun Java Desktop System 2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Sun Java Desktop System distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Sun Java Desktop System 2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Sun Java Desktop System 2 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Sun Java Desktop System 2.
3. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the Sun Java Desktop System 2 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).
Known Issues

Changing Resolution in the Guest Operating System
To change the display resolution in the guest operating system, as root (-su) rerun the VMware Tools configuration program `vmware-config-tools.pl` and select the desired resolution from the list this program presents. If you prefer, you can edit the X configuration file directly to make the change.

Virtual Machine Might Hang During Guest Operating System Installation
On some host systems, the Sun Java Desktop System 2 installer attempts to use a kernel that is incompatible with the ACPI features of the virtual hardware. To work around this problem, open the virtual machine’s configuration file in a text editor and add the following line:

```sh
acpi.present = FALSE
```
You should then be able to install and run a Sun Java Desktop System 2 guest operating system.

Guest Screen Saver
On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
SCO OpenServer 5.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SCO OpenServer 5.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SCO OpenServer 5.0:

- VMware ESX Server
  - SCO OpenServer 5.0.6 – ESX 4.0
  - SCO OpenServer 5.0.7-MP5 – ESX 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

Support Considerations
- There is no version of VMware Tools that supports SCO OpenServer 5.0.

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install SCO OpenServer 5.0 in a virtual machine using the standard distribution CDs, via the boot floppy/network method, and if your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

Virtual disk recommendations
- Minimum size – 1.5GiB for the OpenServer 5.0 root disk.
- biosgeon bootstrap – Required for SCSI drives between 1 and 64GiB. (Not harmful to other drive sizes.)
- IDE virtual disks – SCO BTLD (wd boot-time loadable driver) for improved performance and reliability.
  - Special considerations for drive sizes:
    - OpenServer 5.0.7 – wd BTLD is required for IDE disks larger than 128GiB (137GB).
    - OpenServer 5.0.6 – Cannot use IDE disks that are 128 GiB or larger.

Supported virtual disks
- BusLogic SCSI – Requires SCO blc BTLD 3.05.1 or later.
- LSI SCSI – Requires SCO lsl BTLD 1.03.28 or later.
- LSI SAS – Requires LSI Logic lsl BTLD 1.04.09 or later.
- IDE
  - Under 128GiB – no BTLD required.
  - 128GiB or more – 5.0.7 only, requires SCO “wd” BTLD.

Downloadable drivers

Suitable NIC and HBA drivers are not included in the base SCO OpenServer 5.0 distributions and need to be downloaded from the Internet

NOTE   Floppy images must be renamed with a .f1p extension to be accepted by ESX.
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

- SCO Intel PRO/1000 network adapter driver (Search for the eeG driver.)
- SCO IDE BTLD, located on the SCO FTP Web site:
- SCO BusLogic BTLD 3.05.1, located on the SCO FTP Web site:
- SCO LSI Logic BTLD 1.03.28, located on the SCO FTP Web site:
  ftp://ftp.sco.com/pub/openserver5/507/drivers/lsil_1.03.28/
- LSI Logic LSISAS BTLD 1.04.09, located on the LSI Logic Web site:

**Installation Steps**

The installation steps vary slightly between SCO OpenServer 5.0.6 and 5.0.7-MP5. These instructions document the differences.

1. Insert the SCO-OSR506-InstallCD for 5.0.6 (or SCO-OSR507-InstallCD for 5.0.7) in the CD-ROM drive. Alternatively, you can insert the SCO-OSR506-BootDisk (or SCO-OSR507-BootDisk for 5.0.7) floppy in the floppy drive.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SCO OpenServer 5.0.6 or 5.0.7.

3. Install the appropriate SCSI drivers by typing one of the following boot strings:
   - IDE disk under 128GiB (137GB)
     No boot string required, press Enter.
   - IDE disk 128GiB (137GB) or larger (5.0.7 only)
     restart link="wd"
     When prompted to replace the driver, type r.
   - Buslogic
     restart link="blc" biosgeom
     When prompted to replace the driver, type r.
   - LSI Logic SCSI or SAS
     restart link="lsil" biosgeom

4. Insert the appropriate installation disks when prompted.

5. Read and accept the license agreement.

6. Accept the default CD-ROM type and controller/drive configuration.
   - The Open Server 5.0 install checks for the drive type and defaults to the configuration.

7. Follow the prompts to proceed with the installation.

8. Turn off the bad block scan, which is on by default for IDE disks.
   - The bad block scan is not necessary on a virtual disk.

---

**NOTE** The location of the floppy images on the LSI Web site do not appear to be static. If you cannot locate the floppy images at the addresses VMware provided, try contacting an LSI representative.
When selecting the mouse, press h to specify High Resolution Keyboard Mouse.

Follow the remainder of the installation steps to complete the installation.

**Install Maintenance Pack 5**

After installing Open Server 5.0.7, install Maintenance Pack 5 (MP5).

1. Power on the OpenServer 5.0.7 guest.
2. If you used biosgeom during the install, boot the guest with the `defbootstr biosgeom` command.
3. Insert the SCO-OSR507-SuppCD5 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
4. Install MP5 using the Software Manager.

**NOTE** After MP5 is installed, the virtual machine will boot normally without requiring biosgeom.

This completes basic installation of the OpenServer 5.0 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

There is no version of VMware Tools that supports SCO OpenServer 5.0.

**Known Issues**

**The X Window System Stops Working**

To use X on Open Server 5.0.7 in a virtual machine, you must install MP5. To solve this problem for Open Server 5.0.6, upgrade to 5.0.7 with MP5.

**Mouse Stops Working with Open Server 5.0.6 and 5.0.7 MP5**

To operate a mouse on SCO OpenServer 5.0.7, you need to activate the mouse manually after installing MP5. In the `/etc/conf/pack.d/cn/space.h` file, change the value `i8042_trust_ints` to 1. The mouse will be activated with the next kernel relink and reboot. For Open Server 5.0.6, update to 5.0.7 MP5 to solve this problem.

**Configuring the Network Adapter and Protocol**

Because SCO Open Server 5.0 does not include suitable network drivers, you need to install and use the Intel Pro/1000 network adapter driver.

**To configure the network adapter and protocol**

1. Download the Intel PRO/1000 network adapter driver from the SCO FTP Web site.
2. Install the driver according to SCO instructions.
3. Click Network Manager.
4. Select Hardware > New LAN Adapter.
5. Choose INTEL PRO/1000.
6. If the AMD PCnet-PCI choice is offered, reconfigure the virtual machine with E1000, not the Flexible network controller.
   
   The OpenServer pnt driver is not supported as it operates the Flexible network controller with reduced performance and has not been fully tested.
7. Configure the network for a static address or DHCP.
8. Exit the Network Manager.
9. When prompted, allow it to relink the operating system kernel, boot the new kernel by default, and rebuild the kernel environment.
10 If you are using DHCP, add `param_req:subnet_mask` to the `/etc/dhcpc.conf` file, otherwise the OpenServer 5 DHCP client might select the wrong netmask.

11 Reboot the virtual machine to activate the network.
SCO UnixWare 7

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SCO UnixWare 7 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SCO UnixWare 7:

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - SCO UnixWare 7.1.1-MP5 – ESX 4.0
  - SCO UnixWare 7.1.4-MP4 – ESX 4.0

Additional Support

- **SMP** – full support on ESX 4.0

Support Considerations

- SCO UnixWare 7 runs very slowly without assistance from CPU virtualization hardware. For near-native performance, the host must have support for nested page tables. This is found in AMD Barcelona and later CPUs with Rapid Virtualization Indexing (RVI) and in Intel Nehalem and later CPUs with Extended Page Tables (EPT).
- There is no version of VMware Tools that supports SCO UnixWare.

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install SCO UnixWare 7 in a virtual machine using the standard distribution CDs, via the boot floppy/network method, and if your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the SCO UnixWare 7.1.1 or 7.1.4 boot CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SCO UnixWare 7.
3. If you selected **LSILOGIC/ LSISAS** for SCSI adapter, then select Install HBA disk.
4. Insert the HBA disk.

This completes basic installation of the SCO UnixWare 7 guest operating system.

Install SCO UnixWare Maintenance Packs

After installing the guest operating system, install UnixWare 7.1.1 Maintenance Pack 5 (MP5) or UnixWare 7.1.4 Maintenance Pack 4 (MP4) and patch p535283, according to SCO instructions.

The Maintenance Packs are located here:

- UnixWare 7.1.1 MP5 – ftp://ftp.sco.com/pub/unixware7/uw711pk

If you use more than one virtual CPU in this guest, install the OS Multiprocessor Support (OSMP) package, which is not automatically installed. An additional SCO CPU license is required for each additional CPU. For example, if you use four virtual CPUs, you need one operating system license and three CPU licenses.

Install and Configure SMP

Install OSMP and any necessary licenses according to SCO documentation.
VMware Tools
There is no version of VMware Tools that supports SCO UnixWare.

Known Issues

SCO UnixWare Kernel Panics When Configuring Network
The SCO UnixWare 7.1.1 or 7.1.4 Maintenance Pack 4 kernel panics in igmp_input() function when configuring the network. To correct this problem on SCO UnixWare 7.1.1, install SCO UnixWare 7.1.1 Maintenance Pack 5. To correct this problem on SCO Unixware 7.1.4 Maintenance Pack 4, install the igmp Driver Update (uw714) at ftp://ftp.sco.com/pub/unixware7/714/security/p535283/.
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware product supports 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 – Workstation 6.5.2 (Does not include prebuilt kernel modules (PBMs). See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129).)

- **VMware ESX Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 – ESX 3.5 U4 (For PBM support with a VMI kernel on ESX 3.5 Update 4, install Patch ESX350-200906406-BG. See knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1011800](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1011800). For PBM support for any kernel other than VMI on ESX 3.5 Update 4, install Patch ESX350-200904401-BG. See knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126), 4.0)

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - VMI – support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 on ESX 4.0

64-Bit Support

The following VMware product supports 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 – Workstation 6.5.2 (Does not include prebuilt kernel modules (PBMs). See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129).)

- **VMware ESX Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 – ESX 3.5 U4 (For PBM support for any kernel other than VMI on ESX 3.5 Update 4, install Patch ESX350-200904401-BG. See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126), 4.0)

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U4, 4.0

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.
The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11.
3. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Do Not Use 4-Bit Color**

If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.
**Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine**

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly,” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Website. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware ESX Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.1 (requires Patch ESX-1002082. See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002082.](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002082.), 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMI – support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 Service Pack 2 on ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, and 3.5 U4, and VMI support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 and Service Pack 1 on ESX 4.0.

Support Considerations

- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, Service Pack 2 provides a VMware VMI (Virtual Machine Interface) enabled kernel, which improves guest operating system performance if you enable paravirtual support in the virtual machine. For more information on paravirtualization in general, see the following VMware Web site: [http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html](http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html).
- For instructions to enable VMI support for 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, Service Pack 2 on ESX 3.5 Update 2, ESX 3.5 Update 3, or ESX 3.5 Update 4, read knowledge base article 1005701 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1005701](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1005701).
- To avoid a read-only file system issue with SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 on ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, ESX 3.5 Update 3, or ESX 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Service Pack 1. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306).

- **VMware Fusion**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, Service Pack 2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Update Support
- Service Pack 2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware ESX Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.1 (requires Patch ESX-1002082. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002082.), 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Support Considerations
- To avoid a read-only file system issue with SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 on ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Service Pack 1. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.

- **VMware Fusion**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, Service Pack 2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**General Installation Notes**
Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.
The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, use the arrow keys to select **Installation**, press the F2 key, use the arrow keys to choose **text mode**, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. At the Installation Settings screen, go to the Change menu and choose **Boot**ing.
5. The Boot Loader Setup screen appears. Use the default Boot Loader, **GRUB**.
6. The installer displays a warning that indicates you might lose some settings and prompts you to select a course of action. Select **Convert current configuration** and continue.
7. Select **Finish** to return to the Installation Settings screen.
8. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 guest operating system.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

### IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-configtools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to `Unloading pcnet32 module unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free`

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

### To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

Do Not Use 4-Bit Color
If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine
In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Web site. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware product supports 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 – Workstation 6.5.2 (Does not include prebuilt kernel modules (PBM). See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129)).

- **VMware ESX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 – ESX 3.5 U4 (For PBM support with a VMI kernel on ESX 3.5 Update 4, install Patch ESX350-200906406-BG. See knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1011800](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1011800). For PBM support for any kernel other than VMI on ESX 3.5 Update 4, install Patch ESX35-200904401-BG. See knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126), 4.0 (For PBM support on ESX 4.0, install Patch ESX400-200906403-BG. See knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/200906403](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/200906403)).

**Additional Support**

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U4, 4.0

- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 releases

64-Bit Support

The following VMware product supports 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 – Workstation 6.5.2 (Does not include prebuilt kernel modules (PBM). See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1009129)).

- **VMware ESX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 – ESX 3.5 U4 (For PBM support for any kernel other than VMI on ESX 3.5 Update 4, install Patch ESX350-200904401-BG. See knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010126), 4.0

**Additional Support**

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U4, 4.0

- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 releases

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.
The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 with the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11.
3. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modprobe.conf, add the following lines:

   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Do Not Use 4-Bit Color

If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.
Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine’s MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id-<MAC_address>

New name:
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  **Update Support**
  
  - Service Pack 1 – experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2; full support on Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

  **Update Support**
  
  - Service Pack 1 – experimental support on ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2; full support on ACE 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

  **Update Support**
  
  - Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

  **Experimental Support**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

  **Update Support**
  
  - Service Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.1 (requires Patch ESX-1002082. See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002082.](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002082.)), 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

  **Additional Support**
  
  - SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - VMI – support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 Service Pack 2 on ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, and VMI support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 and Service Pack 1 on ESX 4.0.
- Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 2 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Novell Open Enterprise Server 2 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Novell Open Enterprise Server 2, Support Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSP’s) – provide support for 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 and Service Packs 1 and 2 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf.
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 releases

Support Considerations
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 2 provides a VMware VMI (Virtual Machine Interface) enabled kernel, which improves guest operating system performance if you enable paravirtual support in the virtual machine. For more information on paravirtualization in general, see the following VMware Web site: http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html.
- For instructions to enable VMI support for 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10, Service Pack 2 on ESX 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, read knowledge base article 1005701 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1005701.
- To avoid a read-only file system issue with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 on ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Service Pack 1. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.

- VMware Fusion
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Update Support
  - Service Pack 2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  - Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support
The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10:

- VMware Workstation
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Additional Support
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
Update Support

- Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

**VMware Server**

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Update Support

- Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Experimental Support

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**VMware ESX Server**

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

- Service Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.1 (requires Patch ESX-1002082. See [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002082.](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002082.)), 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Novell Open Enterprise Server 2 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Novell Open Enterprise Server 2, Support Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSP’s) – provide support for 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 and Service Packs 1 and 2 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the [VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages](http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf).
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 releases

Support Considerations

- To avoid a read-only file system issue with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 on ESX Server 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Service Pack 1. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.)

**VMware Fusion**

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support

- Service Pack 2 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.
The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** When you create a virtual machine for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 with Novell Open Enterprise Server on an ESX Server, select Linux for the guest operating system and Open Enterprise Server for the version.

**NOTE** VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, use the arrow keys to select **Installation**, enter the boot option `textmode=1`, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. At the Installation Settings screen, go to the **Change** menu and choose **Boot**ing.
5. The Boot Loader Setup screen appears. Use the default Boot Loader **GRUB**.
6. The installer displays a warning that indicates you might lose some settings and prompts you to select a course of action. Select **Convert current configuration** and continue.
7. Select **Finish** to return to the Installation Settings screen.
8. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modprobe.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

Do Not Use 4-Bit Color
If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine
In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Web site. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 3 – experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1; full support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Service Pack 4 – experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Novell Open Enterprise Server – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 3 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 4 beta – experimental support on ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Service Pack 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Service Pack 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
Service Pack 4 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

VMware ESX Server

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

- Service Pack 1 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 3 – ESX 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Service Pack 4 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1002431. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002431.), 3.0.3, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 1 – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 2 – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and Service Packs 1, 2, 3, and 4 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf.

Support Considerations

- For host machines that use the AMD Opteron processor, see the known issue “SLES 9 SP3 Guest Experiences Monitor Panic in SMP Mode on Host with AMD Opteron Processor” on page 248.

- To avoid a read-only file system issue with SUSE Linux Enterprise 9, Service Pack 3 on ESX Server 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Service Pack 3 Maintenance Release Build 2.6.5-7.286 or Service Pack 4. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.

VMware Fusion

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support

- Service Pack 3 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9:

VMware Workstation

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Update Support
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

- Service Pack 1 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Service Pack 2 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Service Pack 3 – experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, full support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Service Pack 4 – experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 3 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Service Pack 4 beta – experimental support on ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Service Pack 2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Service Pack 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Service Pack 4 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- VMware ESX Server
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 1 – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Service Pack 2 – ESX 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Service Pack 3 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Service Pack 4 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3 (requires Patch ESX-1002431. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1002431), 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 64-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 and Service Packs 1, 2, 3, and 4 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf.
Support Considerations

- To avoid a read-only file system issue with SUSE Linux Enterprise 9, Service Pack 3 on ESX Server 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Service Pack 3 Maintenance Release Build 2.6.5-7.286 or Service Pack 4. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306.

- Only the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is supported in a SLES 9 virtual machine on ESX Server 2.5.x. The LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter is supported for SLES9 virtual machines on ESX Server 3.x. Only the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter is supported in a SLES 9 virtual machine with more than 4GB of memory on ESX Server 3.x.

- **VMware Fusion**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  
  Update Support
  
  - Service Pack 3 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 (SLES 9) in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SLES 9 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  When you create a virtual machine for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 with on an ESX Server, select Linux for the guest operating system and Open Enterprise Server for the version.

**NOTE**  With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. Unless you are using ESX Server 2.5.x, VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the SLES 9 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SLES 9.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, use the arrow keys to select Installation, enter the boot option textmode=1, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. At the Installation Settings screen, go to the Change menu and choose Booting.
5. The Boot Loader Setup screen appears. Set the Boot Loader Type to LILO instead of the default GRUB.
6. The installer displays a warning that indicates you might lose some settings and prompts you to select a course of action. Select Convert current configuration and continue.
7. Select Finish to return to the Installation Settings screen.
8. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SLES 9 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.
IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modprobe.conf, add the following lines:

   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

64-bit SLES 9 with SP 1 Spontaneously Resets on Intel EM64T Hardware

A 64-bit virtual machine with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9, Service Pack 1 might spontaneously reset on Intel EM64T hardware. If this should occur, check to see if the Execute Disable functionality is disabled in the host BIOS. Execute Disable must be enabled for all 64-bit Linux kernels to function properly.

Do Not Use 4-Bit Color

If you change the screen resolution in the SLES 9 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Web site. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server: On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
SLES 9 SP3 Guest Experiences Monitor Panic in SMP Mode on Host with AMD Opteron Processor

VMware Workstation 5.0 or VMware ESX Server 2.x.x: On a host machine with an AMD Opteron processor, a virtual machine running SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 SP3 in SMP mode (that is, with more than one virtual processor) fails to boot, with the monitor error BUG F(140):1913 bugNr-18415. The error is caused by specific CPU instructions executed by the guest kernel on AMD platforms.

To work around this problem, you can set the virtual machine to use only one virtual processor. For instructions, see your VMware product documentation.

This problem has been fixed in Workstation 5.5.x and ESX Server 3.x.

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

ESX Server 3.x: Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 3 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 3 – ESX 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Service Pack 4 – ESX 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 (SLES 8) in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SLES 8 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

VMware, Inc.
Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. Unless you are using ESX Server 2.5.x, VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the SLES 8 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SLES 8.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Part way through the installation, the installer reboots the virtual machine. At the LILO screen, let the boot proceed using the default selection of **linux**.
5. At the Desktop Settings screen, select **640x480 256 colors**.
6. Finish installing SLES 8 as you would on a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SLES 8 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

`Unloading pcnet32 module unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free`

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

**Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020).

**ESX Server 3.x:** Note that disabling PAE also disables NX (no execute) and ED (execute disabled) features found in recent AMD and Intel processors. These features are not supported by ESX Server versions before ESX Server 3.x.

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

**VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 2 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  Update Support
  - Service Pack 2 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 (SLES 7) in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SLES 7 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the SLES 7 installation, a standard VGA16 X server should be installed. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing SLES 7.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the SLES 7 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SLES 7.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Part way through the installation, the installer reboots the virtual machine. At the LILO screen, let the boot proceed using the default selection of `linux`.
5. At the Desktop Settings screen, select 640x480 256 colors.
6. Finish installing SLES 7 as you would on a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SLES 7 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

```
alias ipv6 off
alias net-pf-10 off
```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.
During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Open SUSE Linux 11.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Open SUSE Linux 11.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Open SUSE Linux 11.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Open SUSE Linux 11.1 – Workstation 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Open SUSE Linux 11.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Open SUSE Linux 11.1 – Workstation 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.5.2

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Open SUSE Linux 11.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Open SUSE Linux 11.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Open SUSE Linux 11.1 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Open SUSE Linux 11.1.

3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F3 key to get boot options. Press the F3 key again and use the arrow keys to select text mode, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.

4. Be sure to install gcc and the kernel source so the VMware Tools installer can compile modules for SUSE Linux 11.

   At the Installation Settings screen, choose Change, and then choose Software. From the Filter menu, choose RPM Groups. Choose the Development group, press Enter to open it, and add gcc, gcc-c++, and kernel-source by highlighting those items in the list and pressing the spacebar.

5. At the Test Internet Connection screen—during final configuration, after all packages are installed—do not perform the Internet connection test.
6 Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.
This completes basic installation of the Open SUSE Linux 11.1 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** If the initial X display is not usable, you must install VMware Tools from a text-mode console, as described in “Installing VMware Tools in a Linux Guest Operating System” on page 42.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1 If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2 In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Un-installing Open VMware Tools Included with OpenSUSE 11.1

The OpenSUSE 11.1 operating system includes Open VMware Tools (`open-vm-tools`). When you install Open SUSE 11.1, Open VMware Tools is also installed. If you want to install and use the latest version of VMware Tools that comes with Workstation 6.5.2, you need to first uninstall `open-vm-tools`.

**To locate the pre-installed open-vm-tools:**

1 In an X terminal, as root (su), run this command:
   ```
   rpm -qa | grep vm
   ```

**To uninstall open-vm-tools:**

1 In an X terminal, as root (su), run these commands and in this order:
   ```
   rpm -e open-vm-tools-gui-2008.09.03-5.45
   rpm -e open-vm-tools-2008.09.03-5.45
   rpm -e vmware-kmp-default-2008.09.03_2.6.27.7_9.1-5.45
   ```

2 Restart the OpenSUSE 11.1 guest.

3 Install the VMware Tools included with Workstation 6.5.2.
Known Issues

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine
In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a Open SUSE Linux 11.1 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine's MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id--<MAC_address>
New name:
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0

SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall
This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Open SUSE Linux 10.3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Open SUSE Linux 10.3 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Open SUSE Linux 10.3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Open SUSE Linux 10.3 – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  Open SUSE Linux 10.3 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Open SUSE Linux 10.3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  Open SUSE Linux 10.3 – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  Open SUSE Linux 10.3 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Open SUSE Linux 10.3 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Open SUSE Linux 10.3 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Open SUSE Linux 10.3 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Open SUSE Linux 10.3.

3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F3 key to get boot options. Press the F3 key again and use the arrow keys to select **text mode**, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.

4. Be sure to install gcc and the kernel source so the VMware Tools installer can compile modules for SUSE Linux 10.
At the Installation Settings screen, choose **Change**, and then choose **Software**. From the **Filter** menu, choose **RPM Groups**. Choose the **Development** group, press Enter to open it, and add gcc, gcc-c++, and **kernel-source** by highlighting those items in the list and pressing the spacebar.

5. At the Test Internet Connection screen—during final configuration, after all packages are installed—do not perform the Internet connection test.

6. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the Open SUSE Linux 10.3 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**NOTE** If the initial X display is not usable, you must install VMware Tools from a text-mode console, as described in “Installing VMware Tools in a Linux Guest Operating System” on page 42.

**IPV6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine**

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a Open SUSE Linux 10.3 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine's MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For `eth0`, for example, make the following change:

Old name:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id--<MAC_address>
```

New name:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0
```
SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Open SUSE Linux 10.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Open SUSE Linux 10.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SCO OpenServer 5:

- VMware Workstation – experimental support only
  - Open SUSE Linux 10.2 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE – experimental support only
  - Open SUSE Linux 10.2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  - Open SUSE Linux 10.2 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Open SUSE Linux Server 10.2:

- VMware Workstation – experimental support only
  - Open SUSE Linux 10.2 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE – experimental support only
  - Open SUSE Linux 10.2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  - Open SUSE Linux 10.2 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Open SUSE Linux 10.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Open SUSE Linux 10.2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.
NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Open SUSE Linux 10.2 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Open SUSE Linux 10.2.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F3 key to get boot options. Press the F3 key again and use the arrow keys to select **text mode**, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. Be sure to install gcc and the kernel source so the VMware Tools installer can compile modules for SUSE Linux.
   At the Installation Settings screen, choose Change, and then choose Software. From the Filter menu, choose RPM Groups. Choose the Development group, press Enter to open it, and add gcc, gcc-c++, and kernel-source by highlighting those items in the list and pressing the spacebar.
5. At the Test Internet Connection screen—during final configuration, after all packages are installed—do not perform the Internet connection test.
6. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the Open SUSE Linux 10.2 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE:** If the initial X display is not usable, you must install VMware Tools from a text-mode console, as described in “Installing VMware Tools in a Linux Guest Operating System” on page 42.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

```bash
alias ipv6 off
alias net-pf-10 off
```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

**Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine**

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a Open SUSE Linux 10.2 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine’s MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0
```

New name:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id-<MAC_address>
```

**SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall**

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 10.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 10.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 10.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux 10.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  
  SUSE Linux 10.1 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 10.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 10.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 10.1 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 10.1.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F3 key to get boot options. Press the F3 key again and use the arrow keys to select text mode, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. Be sure to install gcc and the kernel source so the VMware Tools installer can compile modules for SUSE Linux 10.
   
   At the Installation Settings screen, choose Change, and then choose Software. From the Filter menu, choose RPM Groups. Choose the Development group, press Enter to open it, and add gcc, gcc-c++, and kernel-source by highlighting those items in the list and pressing the spacebar.
5. At the Test Internet Connection screen—during final configuration, after all packages are installed—do not perform the Internet connection test.
6. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 10.1 guest operating system.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** If the initial X display is not usable, you must install VMware Tools from a text-mode console, as described in “Installing VMware Tools in a Linux Guest Operating System” on page 42.

### IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a SUSE Linux 10.1 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine’s MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id-<MAC_address>
```

New name:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0
```

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 10 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for SUSE Linux 10 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 10 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux 10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 10 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for SUSE Linux 10 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 10 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 10 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 10 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 10.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F3 key to get boot options. Press the F3 key again and use the arrow keys to select text mode, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. Be sure to install gcc and the kernel source so the VMware Tools installer can compile modules for SUSE Linux 10.
   
   At the Installation Settings screen, choose Change, and then choose Software. From the Filter menu, choose RPM Groups. Choose the Development group, press Enter to open it, and add gcc, gcc-c++, and kernel-source by highlighting those items in the list and pressing the spacebar.
5. At the Test Internet Connection screen—during final configuration, after all packages are installed—do not perform the Internet connection test.
6. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 10 guest operating system.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** If the initial X display is not usable, you must install VMware Tools from a text-mode console, as described in “Installing VMware Tools in a Linux Guest Operating System” on page 42.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a SUSE Linux 10 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine’s MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:
```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id=<MAC_address>
```

New name:
```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0
```

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 9.3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 9.3 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 9.3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  Support Considerations
  - Only the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is supported in a SUSE Linux 9.3 virtual machine on ESX Server 2.5.x.

- **VMware Fusion**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux 9.3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
- VMware Fusion
  SUSE Linux 9.3 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 9.3 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 9.3 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 9.3 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 9.3.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, use the arrow keys to select text mode, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. During final configuration, after all packages are installed, do not perform the Internet connection test.
5. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.
6. If you might copy or move this virtual machine, make the change described in “Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine” on page 280.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 9.3 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Choosing Architecture When Installing SUSE Linux 9.3 on a 64-Bit Host

The SUSE Linux 9.3 operating system provides kernels for both 32-bit and 64-bit architecture. While installing SUSE Linux 9.3 guest operating system on a 64-bit host, press F6 to select the architecture for the guest.

If you created a 32-bit virtual machine and want to install SUSE Linux 9.3 in 32-bit mode, it is important that you select 32-bit for the architecture. If you do not select 32-bit, SUSE Linux 9.3 detects the host architecture, in this case 64-bit, and, by default, will install the corresponding kernel. As a result, the guest operating system will not install correctly, and the 32-bit version of VMware Tools included with the virtual machine will not work.

To correct this problem

1. Create the virtual machine.
2. Power off the virtual machine, and close the virtual machine window before you install the SUSE Linux 9.3 guest.
3. Open the virtual machine configuration (.vmx) file in a text editor and add the following line:
   ```
   monitor_control.disable_longmode=1
   ```
4. Save the file.

Do Not Use 4-Bit Color

If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux 9.3 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a SUSE Linux 9.3 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine's MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:
```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id-<MAC_address>
```
New name:
```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0
```
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

**Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

**VMware Workstation:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 9.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 9.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 9.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – ACE 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – ESX 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  
  **Support Considerations**
  - Only the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is supported in a SUSE Linux 9.2 virtual machine on ESX Server 2.5.x.

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux 9.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 9.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 9.2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. Unless you are using ESX Server 2.5.x, VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 9.2 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 9.2.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, use the arrow keys to select text mode, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. During final configuration, after all packages are installed, do not perform the Internet connection test.
5. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.
6. If you might copy or move this virtual machine, make the change described in “Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine” on page 272.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 9.2 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPV6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
**Known Issues**

**Do Not Use 4-Bit Color**

If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux 9.2 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.

**Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine**

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a SUSE Linux 9.2 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine’s MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id-<MAC_address>

New name:
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0

**Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

**VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

---

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 9.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 9.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 9.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 9.1 – Workstation 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 9.1 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.1 – GSX Server 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  SUSE Linux 9.1 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  Additional Support
    - SMP – full support on ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  Support Considerations
    - Only the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is supported in a SUSE Linux 9.1 virtual machine on ESX Server 2.5.x.

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit SUSE Linux 9.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 9.1 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 9.1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
VMware Server

SUSE Linux 9.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 9.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 9.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. Unless you are using ESX Server 2.5.x, VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 9.1 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 9.1.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, use the arrow keys to select text mode, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.
5. If you might copy or move this virtual machine, make the change described in “Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine” on page 276.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 9.1 guest operating system.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

### IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.

2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Virtual Machine Might Hang during Guest Operating System Installation

On some host systems, the SUSE Linux 9.1 installer attempts to use a kernel that is incompatible with the ACPI features of the virtual hardware. To work around this problem, open the virtual machine's configuration file in a text editor and add the following line:

acpi.present = FALSE

You should then be able to install and run a SUSE Linux 9.1 guest operating system.

Installation from DVD Might Stop with an Error Message

Installation from a DVD might stop at the Software item under Installation Settings with the following error message: No base selection available. ERROR: No proposal.

SUSE has seen this problem on both physical and virtual machines. To work around the problem inside a virtual machine, type the following at the boot prompt as you begin the installation:

linux cdromdevice=/dev/hdc

Replace /dev/hdc with the appropriate device name if your CD-ROM device is not the master device on the second IDE channel. The installation should then proceed normally.

Do Not Use 4-Bit Color

If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux 9.1 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.

Manual Changes Might Be Needed to Use Networking in Copied Virtual Machine

In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine or a virtual machine deployed to end users as part of a VMware ACE package. If you copy a virtual machine and specify that the copy should have a unique identifier, the MAC addresses for any virtual Ethernet adapters attached to the virtual machine change. When a SUSE Linux 9.1 guest operating system is installed, it includes the MAC address as part of a key configuration filename. When the virtual machine's MAC address changes, the guest operating system might fail to associate this configuration file with the virtual Ethernet adapter. If you experience this problem, you can work around it by copying or renaming the file. For eth0, for example, make the following change:

Old name:

/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0-id=<MAC_address>

New name:

/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server: On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 9.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 9.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 9.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux 9.0 – Workstation 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support

  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  SUSE Linux 9.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 9.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 9.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

  Additional Support

  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**

  SUSE Linux 9.0 – ESX 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5

  Additional Support

  - SMP – full support on ESX 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 9.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE Linux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 9.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE**  If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 9.0 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 9.0.
3. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, use the arrow keys to select **text mode**, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
4. Follow the remaining installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 9.0 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools and run the SaX2 configuration utility. See **"Before You Start the X Server."**

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```bash
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```bash
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Before You Start the X Server

After you have installed VMware Tools, but before you start the X server, as the root user, run the SaX2 configuration utility to configure your X server. At a command prompt, type `SaX2` and use the wizard to configure your X server. If you intend to connect to this virtual machine with the VMware Virtual Machine Console, configure the color resolution for 65536 (16-bit) colors or less.

After you run SaX2 you can boot your SUSE Linux 8.2 virtual machine with any of the selections offered in GRUB.

Known Issues

**Virtual Machine Might Hang during Guest Operating System Installation**

On some host systems, the SUSE Linux 9.0 installer attempts to use a kernel that is incompatible with the ACPI features of the virtual hardware. To work around this problem, open the virtual machine's configuration file in a text editor and add the following line:

```bash
acpi.present = FALSE
```
You should then be able to install and run a SUSE Linux 9.0 guest operating system.

**Installation from DVD Might Stop with an Error Message**

Installation from a DVD might stop at the Software item under Installation Settings with the following error message: No base selection available. ERROR: No proposal.

SUSE has seen this problem on both physical and virtual machines. To work around the problem inside a virtual machine, type the following at the boot prompt as you begin the installation:

```bash
linux cdromdevice=/dev/hdc
```

Replace `/dev/hdc` with the appropriate device name if your CD-ROM device is not the master device on the second IDE channel.

The installation should then proceed normally.

**Do Not Use 4-Bit Color**

If you change the screen resolution in the SUSE Linux 9.0 guest operating system, be sure you also set a color bit depth greater than 16 colors (4 bit). If you attempt to use a setting of 16 colors (4 bit), it can cause a fatal error in the X server.

**Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines**

**ESX Server 2.5.x:** Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

**VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server:** On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 8.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 8.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 8.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.2 – Workstation 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.2 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.2 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.2 – ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – full support on ESX 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 8.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 8.2 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the SUSE Linux 8.2 installation, do not install an X server. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing SUSE Linux 8.2.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.
NOTE If you install a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported by the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—where the virtual machine is running.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 8.2 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 8.2.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, type linux, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
5. When prompted, do not install an X server. In the Configure Monitor screen, choose Text Mode Only. Click Accept and finish the installation.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 8.2 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth8 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:

```
alias ipv6 off
alias net-pf-10 off
```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools and run the SaX2 configuration utility. See “Before You Start the X Server.”

NOTE When you start installing VMware Tools (by typing/vmware-install.pl in the vmware-tools-distrib directory), the following message appears:

```
Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?
```

If you plan to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the XF86Config-4.dist file to XF86Config-4.vm. The latter file is used when dual-booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.
Before You Start the X Server

After you have installed VMware Tools, but before you start the X server, as the root user, run the SaX2 configuration utility to configure your X server. At a command prompt, type SaX2 and use the wizard to configure your X server. If you intend to connect to this virtual machine with the VMware Virtual Machine Console, configure the color resolution for 65536 (16-bit) colors or less.

After you run SaX2 you can boot your SUSE Linux 8.2 virtual machine with any of the selections offered in GRUB.

Known Issues

Virtual Machine Might Hang during Guest Operating System Installation

On some host systems, the SUSE Linux 8.2 installer attempts to use a kernel that is incompatible with the ACPI features of the virtual hardware. To work around this problem, open the virtual machine’s configuration file in a text editor and add the following line:

`acpi.present = FALSE`

You should then be able to install and run a SUSE Linux 8.2 guest operating system.

Installation from DVD Might Stop with an Error Message

Installation from a DVD might stop at the Software item under Installation Settings with the following error message: No base selection available. ERROR: No proposal.

SUSE has seen this problem on both physical and virtual machines. To work around the problem inside a virtual machine, type the following at the boot prompt as you begin the installation:

`linux cdromdevice=/dev/hdc`

Replace /dev/hdc with the appropriate device name if your CD-ROM device is not the master device on the second IDE channel.

The installation should then proceed normally.

Disable PAE in ESX Server Virtual Machines

ESX Server 2.5.x: Although ESX Server 2.5.x virtual machines are compatible with Physical Address Extension (PAE), they are not optimized for it. As a result, guest operating systems with PAE enabled might experience poor performance. For best performance, VMware recommends that you disable PAE in guest operating systems. For more information and instructions on disabling PAE, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2020.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

VMware Workstation or VMware GSX Server: On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.
During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 8.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 8.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 8.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.1 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.1 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.1 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  
  SUSE Linux 8.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  
  Additional Support
  
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 8.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 8.1 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the SUSE Linux 8.1 installation, do not install an X server. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing SUSE Linux 8.1.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 8.1 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 8.1.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
5. When prompted, do not install an X server. In the Configure Monitor screen, choose Text Mode Only. Click Accept and finish the installation.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 8.1 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:

   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools and run the SaX2 configuration utility. See “Before You Start the X Server.”

**NOTE** When you start installing VMware Tools (by typing ./vmware-install.pl in the vmware-tools-distrib directory), the following message appears:

Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?

If you plan to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the XF86Config-4.dist file to XF86Config-4.vm. The latter file is used when dual-booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.

Before You Start the X Server

After you have installed VMware Tools, but before you start the X server, as the root user, run the SaX2 configuration utility to configure your X server. At a command prompt, type SaX2 and use the wizard to configure your X server. If you intend to connect to this virtual machine with the VMware Virtual Machine Console, configure the color resolution for 65536 (16-bit) colors or less.
After you run SaX2 you can boot your SUSE Linux 8.1 virtual machine with any of the selections offered in GRUB.

Known Issues

Virtual Machine Might Hang During Guest Operating System Installation
On some host systems, the SUSE Linux 8.1 installer attempts to use a kernel that is incompatible with the ACPI features of the virtual hardware. To work around this problem, open the virtual machine’s configuration file in a text editor and add the following line:

```
acpi.present = FALSE
```
You should then be able to install and run a SUSE Linux 8.1 guest operating system.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver
On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 8.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 8.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 8.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  SUSE Linux 8.0 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  SUSE Linux 8.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  SUSE Linux 8.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  SUSE Linux 8.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 8.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 8.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the SUSE Linux 8.0 installation, do not install an X server. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing SUSE Linux 8.0.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 8.0 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 8.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Install using the text mode installer.
5. When prompted, do not install an X server. In the Configure Monitor screen, choose No X11. The installer asks you to confirm. Click Continue and finish the installation.

This completes basic installation of the SUSE Linux 8.0 guest operating system.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:

   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

   Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

NOTE When you start installing VMware Tools (by typing ./vmware-install.pl in the vmware-tools-distrib directory), the following message appears:

```
Found an installed version of the VMware SVGA driver for XFree86 4. Some versions of this driver included with the XFree86 4 distributions do not work properly. Would you like to install a stable (but possibly older) version of the driver over the currently installed one?
```

If you plan to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer Yes to allow the driver to be installed. Answer Yes again to back up the existing video driver files and also copy the XF86Config-4.dist file to XF86Config-4.vm. The latter file is used when dual-booting the virtual machine.

If you do not intend to dual-boot the virtual machine, answer No to keep the existing driver.

Before You Start the X Server

After you have installed VMware Tools, but before you start the X server, as root user, run the SaX2 configuration utility to configure your X server. At a command prompt, type SaX2 and use the wizard to configure your X server.

After you run SaX2 you can boot your SUSE 8.0 virtual machine with any of the selections offered in LILO.
Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
SUSE Linux 7.3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the SUSE Linux 7.3 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit SUSE Linux 7.3:

- VMware Workstation
  SUSE Linux 7.3 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- VMware ACE
  SUSE Linux 7.3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- VMware GSX Server
  SUSE Linux 7.3 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
- VMware Server
  SUSE Linux 7.3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing SUSE Linux 7.3 in a virtual machine is to use the standard SUSE distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing SUSE Linux 7.3 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** During the SUSE Linux 7.3 installation, do not install an X server. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing SUSE Linux 7.3.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the SUSE Linux 7.3 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing SUSE Linux 7.3.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Install using the text mode installer.
5. When prompted, do not install an X server. In the Configure Monitor screen, choose No X11. The installer asks you to confirm. Click Continue and finish the installation.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

After you have installed VMware Tools, you can boot your SUSE 7.3 virtual machine with any of the selections offered in LILO.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.
During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Turbolinux 10 Server

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Turbolinux 10 Server operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Turbolinux 10 Server:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Turbolinux 10 Server – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  Turbolinux 10 Server – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Turbolinux 10 Server:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Turbolinux 10 Server – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  Turbolinux 10 Server – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- **VMware Fusion**
  Turbolinux 10 Server – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - **SMP** – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Turbolinux 10 Server in a virtual machine is to use the standard Turbolinux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Turbolinux 10 Server via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Turbolinux 10 Server installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Turbolinux 10 Server.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.
IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Screen Turns Black at the End of Turbolinux 10 Server Installation**

_workstation 6.5.x:_ Turbolinux 10 Server has a problem with switching from XGA (Extended Graphics Array) to VGA (Video Graphics Array) such that the screen becomes black when installing on a VMware Workstation. You encounter this problem at the end of the process of installing the Turbolinux 10 Server operating system. After you click Finish in the installation wizard, the screen becomes black and the system does not reboot. To fix this problem, manually reboot the guest operating system.

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Problem Switching from X to VGA

TurboLinux 10 Server has a problem with switching from X to VGA such that the screen becomes black. You encounter this problem at the end of the process of installing the Turbolinux 10 Server operating system. After you click Finish in the installation wizard, the screen becomes black and the system does not reboot.

Workaround: Press the Enter key to continue with the reboot.
Turbolinux 10 Desktop

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Turbolinux 10 Desktop operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Turbolinux 10 Desktop:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Turbolinux 10 Desktop – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Turbolinux 10 Desktop – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Turbolinux 10 Desktop – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  Turbolinux 10 Desktop – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Turbolinux 10 Desktop in a virtual machine is to use the standard Turbolinux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Turbolinux 10 Desktop via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Turbolinux 10 Desktop installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Turbolinux 10 Desktop.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   - `alias ipv6 off`
   - `alias net-pf-10 off`

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion**
  Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 (TLES 8) in a virtual machine is to use the standard Turbolinux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing TLES 8 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**CAUTION** During the TLES 8 installation, do not install an X server. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing TLES 8.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the TLES 8 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing TLES 8.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine, until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
5. When prompted, do not install an X server. In the Desktop Settings screen, choose Text Mode Only. Click Accept and finish the installation.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free.
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```
   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

   Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools and run the SaX2 configuration utility. See “Before You Start the X Server.”

Before You Start the X Server

After you have installed VMware Tools, but before you start the X server, as root user, run the SaX2 configuration utility to configure your X server. At a command prompt, type `SaX2` and use the wizard to configure your X server.

GSX Server: If you intend to connect to this virtual machine with the VMware Virtual Machine Console, configure the color resolution for 65536 (16-bit) colors or less.

After you run SaX2 you can boot your TLES 8 virtual machine with any of the selections offered in GRUB.

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.
Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Turbolinux Workstation 8

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Turbolinux Workstation 8 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Turbolinux Workstation 8:

- VMware Workstation
  Turbolinux Workstation 8 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  Turbolinux Workstation 8 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware GSX Server
  Turbolinux Workstation 8 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- VMware Server
  Turbolinux Workstation 8 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Turbolinux Workstation 8 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Turbolinux distribution CDs. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Turbolinux Workstation 8 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**CAUTION** During the Turbolinux Workstation 8 installation, do not install an X server. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Turbolinux Workstation 8.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Turbolinux Workstation 8 installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Turbolinux Workstation 8.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine, until you get to the selection screens described in the next steps.
4. Install using the text mode installer. In the first installation screen, press the F2 key, and then press Enter to select the text mode installer.
When prompted, do not install an X server. In the Desktop Settings screen, choose **Text Mode Only**. Click **Accept** and finish the installation.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools and run the SaX2 configuration utility. See “**Before You Start the X Server**.”

**Before You Start the X Server**

After you have installed VMware Tools, but before you start the X server, as root user, run the SaX2 configuration utility to configure your X server. At a command prompt, type `SaX2` and use the wizard to configure your X server.

**GSX Server**

If you intend to connect to this virtual machine with the VMware Virtual Machine Console, configure the color resolution for 65536 (16-bit) colors or less.

After you run SaX2, you can boot your Turbolinux Workstation 8 virtual machine with any of the selections offered in GRUB.

**Known Issues**

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.
During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Turbolinux 7.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Turbolinux 7.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Turbolinux 7.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Turbolinux 7.0 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Turbolinux 7.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  Turbolinux 7.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Turbolinux 7.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Turbolinux 7.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Turbolinux 7.0 distribution CD. The notes below describe an installation using the standard distribution CD; however, installing Turbolinux 7.0 via the boot floppy/network method is supported as well. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  During the Turbolinux 7.0 installation, a standard VGA16 X server (without support for the VMware display adapter) is installed. To get an accelerated SVGA X server running inside the virtual machine, install the VMware Tools package immediately after installing Turbolinux 7.0, before you start the X server.

**NOTE**  With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE**  If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the Turbolinux 7.0 CD No. 1 in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Turbolinux 7.0.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC until you get to the selection screen described in the next step.
4. In the Configure Monitor screen, follow the defaults to configure an X server. This is necessary even though you will install a different X server with VMware Tools after you finish installing the guest operating system.
5. Finish installing Turbolinux 7.0 as you would on a physical computer.

At this point Turbolinux 7.0 boots and a login screen appears.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

IPv6

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with vmware-config-tools.pl after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Linux

1. If the file /etc/sysconfig/network contains the line NETWORKING_IPV6=yes, change the line to NETWORKING_IPV6=no.
2. In the file /etc/modules.conf, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Do not start the X server in the guest operating system until you install VMware Tools.

Known Issues

Testing Scripts on Turbolinux 7.0

VMware GSX Server: If you plan to test scripts in a Turbolinux 7.0 guest operating system, you must update the Turbolinux guest operating system. This is a known issue with Turbolinux. Go to ftp://ftp.turbolinux.com/pub/TurboLinux/TurboLinux/ia32/Workstation/7/updates/RPMS/initscripts-7.0.0-18.i586.rpm. For more information about running scripts in a guest operating system, see the GSX Server documentation.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Guest Screen Saver

On a Linux host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Ubuntu 9.04

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu 9.04 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu 9.04:

- **VMware ESX Server**

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U4

- **VMware Fusion**
  Desktop Edition – Fusion 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu 9.04:

- **VMware ESX Server**

  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U4

- **VMware Fusion**
  Desktop Edition – Fusion 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu 9.04 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu 9.04 distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.
NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Ubuntu 9.04 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. After the Ubuntu 9.04 installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the Reset button to restart it.
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

NOTE As the installation progresses, the message Configuring apt / Scanning the mirror appears indicating that the network is being scanned. If your site uses an HTTP proxy, this message might persist for 10 minutes or longer, indicating that the installation has been delayed. If you wait, network scanning eventually stops and the installation resumes. When the installation completes, in the Ubuntu 9.04 user interface, choose System > Preferences > Network Proxy to set the HTTP proxy in the Network Proxy Preferences dialog box.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

NOTE For Ubuntu 9.04, install VMware Tools using the tar installer.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

To enable root in a virtual machine running Ubuntu

Ubuntu Desktop Edition

1. Select System > Administration > Login Window, and click the Security tab.
2. Select the Allow local system administrator login check box and click Close.
3. Select System > Administration > Users and Groups and click Unlock.
4. In the Authenticate window, type your password and click Authenticate.
5. Select root, click Properties, and under Set password by hand, establish a root password.

IPv6

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu

1. Log on as root or superuser.
2. In the `/etc/modprobe.d/aliases` file change the line
   
   `alias net-pf-10 ipv6`
   
   to
   
   `alias net-pf-10 off`
3. Save the file and reboot the system.

   After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Ubuntu 9.04 Does Not Include vmmouse Driver**

ESX 4.0 and ESX 3.5 Update 4: The vmmouse driver that enables the mouse ungrab feature is not provided by X.org, which is included with Ubuntu 9.04. As a result, you cannot move the mouse outside of your virtual machine window. Change this behavior using one of the following methods:

- Use the key combination Ctrl+Alt to release the mouse.
- To eliminate the need to use the key combination permanently, manually install the vmmouse driver:
  1. Open a terminal window.
  2. Type the `sudo apt-get install xserver-xorg-input-vmmouse` command at the command prompt.
  3. Reboot the virtual machine.

**NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-Bit Ubuntu Guest**

If you receive the error message `[/ 2355.842517 ] <unknown>: hw csum failure` after installing the 32-bit version of this guest, you probably need to change the network adapter. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972).

**SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall**

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.
This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Ubuntu 8.10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu 8.10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu 8.10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Desktop Edition – Workstation 6.5.2
  - Server Edition – Workstation 6.5.2

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Desktop Edition – ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
  - Server Edition – ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit Ubuntu 8.10 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the [VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages](http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf)
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu Linux 8.10 releases

- **VMware Fusion**
  - Desktop Edition – Fusion 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu 8.10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Desktop Edition – Workstation 6.5.2
  - Server Edition – Workstation 6.5.2

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - Desktop Edition – ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
  - Server Edition – ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0

Additional Support

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.5 U4, ESX 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 64-bit Ubuntu on ESX Server 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the [VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages](http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf)
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu Linux 8.10 releases

- **VMware Fusion**
  - Desktop Edition – Fusion 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

DEPRECATED
Additional Support

- SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu 8.10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu 8.10 distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the Ubuntu 8.10 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu 8.10.
3. After the Ubuntu 8.10 installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the **Reset** button to restart it.
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**NOTE** As the installation progresses, the message **Configuring ... the mirror appears** indicating that the network is being scanned. If your site uses an HTTP proxy, this message might persist for 10 minutes or longer, indicating that the installation has been delayed. If you wait, network scanning eventually stops and the installation resumes. When the installation completes, in the Ubuntu 8.10 user interface, choose **System > Preferences > Network Proxy** to set the HTTP proxy in the Network Proxy Preferences dialog box.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** For Ubuntu 8.10, install VMware Tools using the tar installer.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

#### To enable root in a virtual machine running Ubuntu

**Ubuntu Server Edition**

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Log in as a normal user.
3. Type `sudo passwd root` to set a root password.

**Ubuntu Desktop Edition**

1. Select **System > Administration > Login Window**, and click the **Security** tab.
2. Select the **Allow local system administrator login** check box and click **Close**.
3. Select **System > Administration > Users and Groups** and click **Unlock**.
4 In the **Authenticate** window, type your password and click **Authenticate**.

5 Select root, click **Properties**, and under **Set password by hand**, establish a root password.

**IPv6**

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMWare Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu, disable IPv6 before installing VMWare Tools.

**NOTE** VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMWare Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu**

1 Log on as root or superuser.

2 In the `/etc/modprobe.d/aliases` file change the line

   `alias net-pf-10 ipv6`

   to

   `alias net-pf-10 off`

3 Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMWare Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMWare Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest**

If you receive the error message `[ 2355, 842517 ] <unknown>: hw csum failure` after installing the 32-bit version of this guest, you probably need to change the network adapter. For more information, see the VMWare knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972).

**SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall**

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMWare knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMWare knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.
This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
**Ubuntu 8.04 LTS**

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu 8.04 LTS operating system.

### 32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu 8.04 LTS:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - Server Edition – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Desktop Edition – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Update Support
    - Ubuntu 8.04.1 LTS – experimental support on Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
    - Ubuntu 8.04.2 LTS – Workstation 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  - Server Edition – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - Desktop Edition – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  - Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
    - 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Update Support
    - Ubuntu 8.04.1 LTS – ESX 3.0.3 (Requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.)
      - 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
    - Ubuntu 8.04.2 LTS – ESX 3.0.3 (Requires Patch ESX303-200905401-SG for support for prebuilt kernel modules.)
      - 3.5 U3 (Does not include prebuilt kernel modules. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008973.)
      - 3.5 U4 (Includes support for prebuilt kernel modules.)

**Additional Support**

- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.3, ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMI – full support on ESX 3.5 U2, ESX 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSPs) – provide support for 32-bit Ubuntu 8.04 LTS and 8.0.4.1 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. OSPs also provide support for 32-bit Ubuntu 8.04.2 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu 8.04 LTS releases
Support Considerations

- Ubuntu 8.04 provides a VMware VMI (Virtual Machine Interface) enabled kernel, which improves guest operating system performance if you enable paravirtual support in the virtual machine. For more information on paravirtualization in general, see the following VMware Web site: http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html

- **VMware Fusion**
  Ubuntu 8.0.4 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Update Support
  - Ubuntu 8.04.1 LTS – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**64-Bit Support**
The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu 8.04 LTS:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Server Edition – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Desktop Edition – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Ubuntu 8.04.1 LTS – experimental support on Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Ubuntu 8.04.2 LTS – Workstation 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Server Edition – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Desktop Edition – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Server Edition – ESX 3.0.3 (Requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.), 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Desktop Edition – ESX 3.0.3 (Requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.), 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Update Support
  - Ubuntu 8.04.1 LTS – ESX 3.0.3 (Requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.), 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Ubuntu 8.04.2 LTS – ESX 3.0.3 (Requires Patch ESX303-200905401-SG for support for prebuilt kernel modules.), 3.5 U3 (Does not include prebuilt kernel modules. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008973.), 3.5 U4 (Includes support for prebuilt kernel modules.)
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.3, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ VMware Tools Operating System Specific Packages (OSP) – provide support for 64-bit Ubuntu 8.04 LTS and 8.04.1 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, 3.5 Update 4, and ESX 4.0. OSPs also provide support for 64-bit Ubuntu 8.04.2 on ESX Server 3.5 Update 4 and ESX 4.0. For more information, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf

■ vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu 8.04 LTS releases

■ VMware Fusion

Ubuntu 8.04.1 LTS – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Additional Support

■ SMP – full support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu 8.04 LTS in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu 8.04 LTS distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1 Insert the Ubuntu 8.04 LTS CD in the CD-ROM drive.

2 Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu 8.04 LTS.

3 After the Ubuntu 8.04 LTS installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the Reset button to restart it.

4 Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

NOTE As the installation progresses, the message Configuring opt/ Scanning the mirror appears indicating that the network is being scanned. If your site uses an HTTP proxy, this message might persist for 10 minutes or longer, indicating that the installation has been delayed. If you wait, network scanning eventually stops and the installation resumes. When the installation completes, in the Ubuntu 8.04 LTS user interface, choose System > Preferences > Network Proxy to set the HTTP proxy in the Network Proxy Preferences dialog box.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

NOTE For Ubuntu 8.04 LTS, 8.04.1, and 8.04.2, you can install VMware Tools using the tar installer or the appropriate OSP. For a complete set of instructions for downloading, installing, and upgrading VMware Tools OSPs, see the VMware Tools Installation Guide Operating System Specific Packages at: http://www.vmware.com/pdf/osp_install_guide.pdf

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.
To enable root in a virtual machine running Ubuntu

Ubuntu Server Edition

1 Open a terminal window.
2 Log in as a normal user.
3 Type `sudo passwd root` to set a root password.

Ubuntu Desktop Edition

1 Select System > Administration > Login Window, and click the Security tab.
2 Select the Allow local system administrator login check box and click Close.
3 Select System > Administration > Users and Groups and click Unlock.
4 In the Authenticate window, type your password and click Authenticate.
5 Select root, click Properties, and under Set password by hand, establish a root password.

IPv6

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu

1 Log on as root or superuser.
2 In the `/etc/modprobe.d/aliases` file change the line
   `alias net-pf-10 ipv6`
   to
   `alias net-pf-10 off`
3 Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest

If you receive the error message `[ 2355.842517 ] <unknown>: hw csum failure` after installing the 32-bit version of this guest, you probably need to change the network adapter. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972).

SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).
**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Ubuntu Linux 7.10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu Linux 7.10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu Linux 7.10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.10 – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - VMI – experimental support on Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu Linux 7.10 releases

Support Considerations

- Ubuntu Linux 7.10 provides a VMware VMI (Virtual Machine Interface) enabled kernel, which improves guest operating system performance if you enable paravirtual support in the virtual machine. For more information on paravirtualization in general, see the following VMware Web site: [http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html](http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html)

- **VMware Server**
  Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Server Edition – ESX 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Desktop Edition – ESX 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – experimental support on ESX 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - VMI – full support on ESX 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Support Considerations

- Ubuntu Linux 7.10 provides a VMware VMI (Virtual Machine Interface) enabled kernel, which improves guest operating system performance if you enable paravirtual support in the virtual machine. For more information on paravirtualization in general, see the following VMware Web site: [http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html](http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html)

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu Linux 7.10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.10 – Workstation 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Server Edition – ESX 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Desktop Edition – ESX 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Additional Support

- SMP – experimental support on ESX 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu Linux 7.10 releases

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu Linux 7.10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu Linux distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Ubuntu Linux CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu Linux.
3. After the Ubuntu Linux installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the Reset button to restart it.
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

NOTE As the installation progresses, the message Configuring apt/Scanning the mirror appears indicating that the network is being scanned. If your site uses an HTTP proxy, this message might persist for 10 minutes or longer, indicating that the installation has been delayed. If you wait, network scanning eventually stops and the installation resumes. When the installation completes, in the Ubuntu Linux user interface, choose System > Preferences > Network Proxy to set the HTTP proxy in the Network Proxy Preferences dialog box.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

NOTE You must use the tar installer to install VMware Tools in Ubuntu Linux.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

To enable root in a virtual machine running Ubuntu Linux

Ubuntu Server Edition

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Log in as a normal user.
3. Type `sudo passwd root` to set a root password.

Ubuntu Desktop Edition

1. Select System > Administration > Login Window, and click the Security tab.
2. Select the Allow local system administrator login check box and click Close.
3. Select System > Administration > Users and Groups and click Unlock.
4. In the Authenticate window, type your password and click Authenticate.
5. Select root, click Properties, and under Set password by hand, establish a root password.

**IPV6**

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu Linux distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**NOTE**  VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu Linux**

1. Log on as root or superuser.
2. In the `/etc/modprobe.d/aliases` file change the line
   ```
   alias net-pf-10 ipv6
   ```
   to
   ```
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```
3. Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest**

If you receive the error message `[ 2355.842517 ] <unknown>: hw csum failure` after installing the 32-bit version of this guest, you probably need to change the network adapter. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972).

**SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall**

This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020).

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.
Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Ubuntu Linux 7.04

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu Linux 7.04 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu Linux 7.04:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - VMI – experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Support Considerations
  - Ubuntu Linux 7.04 provides a VMware VMI (Virtual Machine Interface) enabled kernel, which improves guest operating system performance if you enable paravirtual support in the virtual machine. For more information on paravirtualization in general, see the following VMware Web site: [http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html](http://www.vmware.com/interfaces/paravirtualization.html)

- **VMware ACE**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Server Edition – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Desktop Edition – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – experimental support on ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu Linux 7.04 releases

  Support Considerations
  - To avoid a read-only file system issue with Ubuntu Linux 7.04 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4 upgrade to Ubuntu Linux 7.10. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306).

- **VMware Fusion**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu Linux 7.04:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
Additional Support

- SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  Server Edition – 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Desktop Edition – 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

  Additional Support
  - SMP – experimental support on ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Ubuntu Linux 7.04 releases

Support Considerations

- To avoid a read-only file system issue with Ubuntu Linux 7.04 on ESX Server 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 Update 1, 3.5 Update 2, 3.5 Update 3, or 3.5 Update 4, upgrade to Ubuntu Linux 7.10. Refer to knowledge base article 51306 at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/51306).

- **VMware Fusion**
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu Linux 7.04 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu Linux distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Ubuntu Linux CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu Linux.
3. After the Ubuntu Linux installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the **Reset** button to restart it.
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

NOTE As the installation progresses, the message Configuring apt/Scanning the mirror appears indicating that the network is being scanned. If your site uses an HTTP proxy, this message might persist for 10 minutes or longer, indicating that the installation has been delayed. If you wait, network scanning eventually stops and the installation resumes. When the installation completes, from the Ubuntu Linux user interface, choose System > Preferences > Network Proxy to set the HTTP proxy in the Network Proxy Preferences dialog box.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

NOTE You must use the tar installer to install VMware Tools in Ubuntu Linux.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

Ubuntu Server Edition

1 Open a terminal window.
2 Log in as a normal user.
3 Type sudo passwd root to set a root password.

Ubuntu Desktop Edition

1 Select System > Administration > Login Window, and click the Security tab.
2 Select the Allow local system administrator login check box and click Close.
3 Select System > Administration > Users and Groups and click Unlock.
4 In the Authenticate window, type your password and click Authenticate.
5 Select root, click Properties, and under Set password by hand, establish a root password.

IPv6

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu Linux distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, vmware-config-tools.pl might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

NOTE VMware ESX 4.0 and later releases support IPv6. You do not need to disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu Linux

1 Log on as root or superuser.
2 In the /etc/modprobe.d/aliases file change the line
   alias net-pf-10 ipv6
   to
   alias net-pf-10 off
3 Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.
Known Issues

NetWork Adapter Error Message After Installing VMware Tools on 32-bit Ubuntu Guest
If you receive the error message [ 2355.842517 ] <unknown>: hw csum failure after installing the 32-bit version of this guest, you probably need to change the network adapter. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1008972.

SMP Virtual Machines Running Linux Using the TSC Clocksource Stop Responding or Stall
This guest operating system might experience TSC Clocksource issues, which could cause the virtual machine to stop responding or stall. For more information, see the VMware knowledge base article http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1007020.

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior
The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor
VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Ubuntu Linux 6.10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu Linux 6.10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu Linux 6.10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Experimental Support
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support for Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7

- **VMware ACE**
  Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

- **VMware Fusion**
  Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu Linux 6.10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Experimental Support
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support for Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7

- **VMware ACE**
  Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
VMware Server

Server Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
Desktop Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
Additional Support
- SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

VMware Fusion

Ubuntu Linux 6.10 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu Linux 6.10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu Linux distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Ubuntu Linux CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu Linux.
3. After the Ubuntu Linux installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the Reset button to restart it.
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** You must use the tar installer to install VMware Tools in Ubuntu Linux.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

Ubuntu Server Edition

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Log in as a normal user.
3. Type `sudo passwd root` to set a root password.

Ubuntu Desktop Edition

1. Select System > Administration > Login Window, and click the Security tab.
2. Select the Allow local system administrator login check box and click Close.
3. Select System > Administration > Users and Groups and click Unlock.
4. In the Authenticate window, type your password and click Authenticate.
5 Select root, click **Properties**, and under **Set password by hand**, establish a root password.

**IPv6**

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu Linux distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu Linux**

1 Log on as root or superuser.
2 In the `/etc/modprobe.d/aliases` file change the line
   
   `alias net-pf-10 ipv6`
   
   to
   
   `alias net-pf-10 off`
3 Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Ubuntu Linux 6.06

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu Linux 6.06 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu Linux 6.06:

- VMware Workstation
  Ubuntu Linux 6.06 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Ubuntu Linux 6.06 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  Ubuntu Linux 6.06 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  Server Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu Linux 6.06:

- VMware Workstation – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 6.06 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Eclipse Integrated Virtual Debugger support for Ubuntu Linux 6.06 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 6.06 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server – experimental support only
  Server Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Desktop Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu Linux 6.06 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu Linux distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Ubuntu Linux CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu Linux.
3. After the Ubuntu Linux installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the **Reset** button to restart it.
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** You must use the tar installer to install VMware Tools in Ubuntu Linux.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest. You can complete the following steps either before or during the VMware Tools installation.

Ubuntu Server Edition

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Log in as a normal user.
3. Type `sudo passwd root` to set a root password.

Ubuntu Desktop Edition

1. Select **System > Administration > Login Window**, and click the **Security** tab.
2. Select the **Allow local system administrator login** check box and click **Close**.
3. Select **System > Administration > Users and Groups** and click **Unlock**.
4. In the **Authenticate** window, type your password and click **Authenticate**.
5. Select root, click **Properties**, and under **Set password by hand**, establish a root password.

**IPv6**

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu Linux distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu Linux

1 Log on as root or superuser.

2 In the /etc/modprobe.d/aliases file change the line
   alias net-pf-10 ipv6
   to
   alias net-pf-10 off

3 Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
**Ubuntu Linux 5.10**

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu Linux 5.10 operating system.

### 32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu Linux 5.10:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion**
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

### 64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu Linux 5.10:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server** – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion** – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu Linux 5.10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu Linux distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Ubuntu Linux CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu Linux.
3. After the Ubuntu Linux installer copies the files it needs to the virtual disk, it ejects the installation CD and displays a message indicating that the computer will restart. If the virtual machine fails to restart as expected, click the *Reset* button to restart it.
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**NOTE** You must use the tar installer to install VMware Tools in Ubuntu Linux.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest.

**Ubuntu Server Edition**

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Log in as a normal user.
3. Type *sudo passwd root* to set a root password.

**Ubuntu Desktop Edition**

1. Select *System > Administration > Login Window*, and click the *Security* tab.
2. Select the *Allow local system administrator login* check box and click *Close*.
3. Select *System > Administration > Users and Groups* and click *Unlock*.
4. In the *Authenticate* window, type your password and click *Authenticate*.
5. Select root, click *Properties*, and under *Set password by hand*, establish a root password.

**IPv6**

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu Linux distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.
To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu Linux

1  Log on as root or superuser.
2  In the /etc/modprobe.d/aliases file change the line
   alias net-pf-10 ipv6
   to
   alias net-pf-10 off
3  Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

VMware Tools and 64-bit Version of Ubuntu Linux 5.10

The 64-bit version of Ubuntu Linux 5.10 lacks the driver needed for correct operation of the X server in the virtual machine. The driver is installed when you install VMware Tools. To install VMware Tools in the 64-bit version of Ubuntu Linux 5.10, see knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1900.

Known Issues

Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
Ubuntu Linux 5.04

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Ubuntu Linux 5.04 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Ubuntu Linux 5.04:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Ubuntu Linux 5.04:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server** – experimental support only
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing Ubuntu Linux 5.04 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Ubuntu Linux distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.
NOTE With many Linux guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Ubuntu Linux CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Ubuntu Linux.
3. If your host computer is on a network that uses a proxy server for Internet access, enter information about the proxy server name and port at the boot prompt.
   
   ```
   linux http_proxy=http://<proxy_server>:<port_number>
   ```
4. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.
   
   You can now become root at any time using the normal `su` command and the root password you just created.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

NOTE You must use the tar installer to install VMware Tools in Ubuntu Linux.

To install VMware Tools using the tar installer, you need to enable root in your Ubuntu guest.

**Ubuntu Server Edition**

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Log in as a normal user.
3. Type `sudo passwd root` to set a root password.

**Ubuntu Desktop Edition**

1. Select **System > Administration > Login Window**, and click the **Security** tab.
2. Select the **Allow local system administrator login** check box and click **Close**.
3. Select **System > Administration > Users and Groups** and click **Unlock**.
4. In the **Authenticate** window, type your password and click **Authenticate**.
5. Select root, click **Properties**, and under **Set password by hand**, establish a root password.

**IPv6**

Although IPv6 is supported with bridged networking, many Ubuntu Linux distributions boot faster when IPv6 networking is disabled. If the virtual machine is unable to communicate using the IPv6 protocol when it is enabled, `vmware-config-tools.pl` might not be able to correctly configure VMware Tools after installation.

To prevent this problem in virtual machines, running some versions of Ubuntu Linux, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running Ubuntu Linux**

1. Log on as root or superuser.
2. In the `/etc/modprobe.d/aliases` file change the line
   
   ```
   alias net-pf-10 ipv6
   ```
   to
   
   ```
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```
3  Save the file and reboot the system.

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**Configuration Changes Might Be Necessary for Proper Timekeeping Behavior**

The default timekeeping configuration for this guest operating system might experience problems. For Linux timekeeping best practices, see the VMware knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006427).

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a Linux virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of Linux choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a Linux virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a Linux installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
**FreeBSD 7.1**

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 7.1 operating system.

**32-Bit Support**

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 7.1:

- **VMware ESX Server**
  
  FreeBSD 7.1 – ESX 4.0

  Additional Support

  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

**64-Bit Support**

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 7.1:

- **VMware ESX Server**
  
  FreeBSD 7.1 – ESX 4.0

  Additional Support

  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install FreeBSD 7.1 from a DVD or CDs.

Download the ISO images from the FreeBSD Web site:


The ISO images are located in the /ISO-IMAGES/7.1 directory:


  - 7.1-RELEASE-i386-bootonly.iso
  - 7.1-RELEASE-i386-disc1.iso
  - 7.1-RELEASE-i386-disc2.iso
  - 7.1-RELEASE-i386-dvd1.iso.gz

- **64-bit** - ftp://ftp5.FreeBSD.org/pub/FreeBSD/releases/amd64/ISO-IMAGES/7.1

  - 7.1-RELEASE-amd64-bootonly.iso
  - 7.1-RELEASE-amd64-disc1.iso
  - 7.1-RELEASE-amd64-disc2.iso
  - 7.1-RELEASE-amd64-disc3.iso
  - 7.1-RELEASE-amd64-dvd1.iso.gz

The disc1.iso file contains the base FreeBSD system and a few prebuilt packages. The disc2.iso and disc3.iso files contain more prebuilt packages. The dvd1.iso.gz file is DVD-sized and includes everything that is on the CD-ROM disks.

The bootonly.iso for the FreeBSD install CD-ROM executes the sysinstall application. The sysinstall application is the required to initially install FreeBSD 7.1 on the hard drive.
Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

To install FreeBSD 7.1:

1. Insert the FreeBSD 7.1 32-bit or FreeBSD 64-bit CD or DVD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the guest.
3. Use the `sysinstall` utility, select the standard, custom, or express install method.
4. Use the `sysinstall` utility to create a partition.
   You can use `disklabel` to automatically create partitions and assign default sizes.
5. Accept the changes.
6. Choose the distributions, for example, X-kernel developer, normal user, and so on.
7. Select CD or DVD for the media.
8. If you selected CD, insert the appropriate CD when prompted. (If you selected DVD, the installation will not prompt for additional DVDs.)
9. Configure the system devices, components, and so on for the guest.
10. Reboot the guest when the installation completes.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

### Known Issues

**FreeBSD 7.1 Guest Fails With Odd Number of Virtual CPUs**

FreeBSD 7.1 guests hang before mounting the root filesystem when the number of virtual CPUs is not a power of two. This is due to a bug in the FreeBSD ULE scheduler. This bug has been fixed in FreeBSD 7.2.

**Install and Reboot of 64-Bit FreeBSD 7.1 Guest Takes a Long Time With 4 Virtual CPUs**

If your 64-bit FreeBSD 7.1 guest is configured with four CPUs or more, it can take a long time to install and reboot.

**FreeBSD 7.1 Guest With Large Amounts of Memory Can Stall After Splash Screen Appears**

Powering on a FreeBSD 7.1 guest with large amounts of memory, for example 32GB RAM, can cause the guest to pause after the splash screen appears. The pause might last as long as eight minutes.

**Cannot Change the Screen Resolution in FreeBSD 7.1 Guests**

You cannot change the screen resolution for a FreeBSD 7.1 guest. Install VMware Tools to solve this problem.

**VMware Tools Custom Script for Suspend Power Event Does Not Work in FreeBSD 7.1 Guest**

The `VMware-toolbox` custom script for suspend power event does not work.
Scroll Up Operation With the Mouse Wheel Using a VI-client Does Not Work in 32-bit FreeBSD 7.1 Guest

The mouse scroll up operation does not work on a 32-bit FreeBSD 7.1 guest when accessed through VI client. However, if you access the client through any VNC software the scroll up action works.

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.
FreeBSD 7.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 7.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 7.0:

- **ESX Server**
  FreeBSD 7.0 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

- **VMware Fusion**
  FreeBSD 7.0 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 7.0:

- **ESX Server**
  FreeBSD 7.0 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

- **VMware Fusion**
  FreeBSD 7.0 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 7.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.
VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Known Issues

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```sh
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

Guest Screen Saver

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 6.4

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 6.4 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 6.4:

- VMware ESX Server
  FreeBSD 6.4 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 6.4:

- VMware ESX Server
  FreeBSD 6.4 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install FreeBSD 6.4 from a DVD or CDs.

Download the ISO images from the FreeBSD Web site:


The ISO images are located in the /ISO-IMAGES/6.4 directory:

  - 6.4-RELEASE-i386-bootonly.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-i386-disc1.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-i386-disc2.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-i386-disc3.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-i386-dvd1.iso.gz

  - 6.4-RELEASE-amd64-bootonly.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-amd64-disc1.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-amd64-disc2.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-amd64-disc3.iso
  - 6.4-RELEASE-amd64-dvd1.iso.gz

The disc1.iso file contains the base FreeBSD 6.4 operating system and a few pre-built packages. The disc2.iso and disc3.iso files contain additional pre-built packages. The dvd1.iso.gz file is DVD-sized and includes everything that is on the CD-ROM disks.
The bootonly.iso from the FreeBSD install CD-ROM executes the sysinstall application. The sysinstall application is required to initially install FreeBSD on your hard drive. Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

### Installation Steps

To install FreeBSD 6.4:

1. Insert the FreeBSD 6.4 32-bit or FreeBSD 6.4 64-bit CD or DVD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the guest.
3. Use the sysinstall utility, select the standard, custom, or express install method.
4. Use the sysinstall utility to create a partition.
   You can use disklabel to automatically create partitions and assign default sizes.
5. Accept the changes.
6. Choose the Distributions, for example, X-kernel developer, normal user, and so on.
7. Select CD or DVD for the media.
8. If you selected CD, insert the appropriate CD when prompted. (If you selected DVD, the guest will not prompt for additional DVDs.)
9. Configure the system devices, components, and so on for the guest.
10. Reboot the guest when the installation completes.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

### Known Issues

**VMware Tools Custom Script for Suspend Power Event Does Not Work in FreeBSD 6.4 Guest**

VMware-toolbox custom script for suspend power event does not work.

**Scroll Up Operation With the Mouse Wheel Using VI Client Does Not Work in 32-bit FreeBSD 6.4 Guests**

The mouse scroll up operation does not work on a 32-bit FreeBSD 6.4 guest when accessed through VI client. However, if you access the client through any VNC software the scroll up action works.

**/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests**

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```bash
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.
Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.
FreeBSD 6.3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 6.3 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 6.3:

- **VMware ESX Server**
  FreeBSD 6.3 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 6.3:

- **VMware ESX Server**
  FreeBSD 6.3 – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – full support on ESX 4.0

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install FreeBSD 6.4 from a DVD or CDs.

Download the ISO images from the FreeBSD Web site:


The ISO images are located in the /ISO-IMAGES/6.3 directory:

  - 6.3-RELEASE-i386-bootonly.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-i386-disc1.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-i386-disc2.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-i386-disc3.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-i386-dvd1.iso.gz
  - 6.3-RELEASE-amd64-bootonly.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-amd64-disc1.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-amd64-disc2.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-amd64-disc3.iso
  - 6.3-RELEASE-amd64-dvd1.iso.gz

The disc1.iso file contains the base FreeBSD 6.3 operating system and a few pre-built packages. The disc2.iso and disc3.iso files contain additional pre-built packages. The dvd1.iso.gz file is DVD-sized and includes everything that is on the CD-ROM disks.
The bootonly.iso from the FreeBSD install CD-ROM executes the sysinstall application. The sysinstall application is the required to initially install FreeBSD on your hard drive.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**Installation Steps**

To install FreeBSD 6.3:

1. Insert the FreeBSD 6.3 32-bit or FreeBSD 6.3 64-bit CD or DVD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the guest.
3. Use the sysinstall utility, select the standard, custom, or express install method.
4. Use the sysinstall utility to create a partition.
   You can use Disklabel to automatically create partitions and assign default sizes.
5. Accept the changes.
6. Choose the Distributions, for example, X-kernel developer, normal user, and so on.
7. Select CD or DVD for the media.
8. If you selected CD, insert the appropriate CD when prompted. (If you selected DVD, the guest will not prompt for additional DVDs.)
9. Configure the system devices, components, and so on for the guest.
10. Reboot the guest when the installation completes.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**Known Issues**

/\etc\vmware-tools\locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /\etc\vmware-tools\locations file gets amended with this string:

    remove_file /\etc\vmware-tools\icu
    file /\etc\vmware-tools\icu

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**VMware Tools Custom Script for Suspend Power Event Does Not Work in FreeBSD 6.3 Guest**

VMware-toolbox custom script for suspend power event does not work.

**Scroll Up Operation With the Mouse Wheel Using VI Client Does Not Work in 32-bit FreeBSD 6.3 Guests**

The mouse scroll operation does not work on a 32-bit FreeBSD 6.3 guest when accessed through VI client. However, if you access the client through any VNC software the scroll up action works.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.
FreeBSD 6.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 6.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 6.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 6.2 – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 6.2 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 6.2:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 6.2 – Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 6.2 – ACE 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 6.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.
Known Issues

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

Guest Screen Saver

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 6.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 6.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 6.1:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  FreeBSD 6.1 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  FreeBSD 6.1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Fusion**
  FreeBSD 6.1 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 6.1:

- **VMware Fusion**
  FreeBSD 6.1 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 6.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).
Known Issues

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

Guest Screen Saver

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 6.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 6.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 6.0:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  FreeBSD 6.0 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  FreeBSD 6.0 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server** – experimental support only
  FreeBSD 6.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 6.0:

- **VMware Server** – experimental support only
  FreeBSD 6.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 6.0.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.
**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**Known Issues**

/`etc/vmware-tools/locations` File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the `/etc/vmware-tools/locations` file gets amended with this string:

```bash
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 5.5

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 5.5 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 5.5:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 5.5:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware Fusion**
  FreeBSD 5.5 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 5.5 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.
Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE**  With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE**  If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

### Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

### VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

### Known Issues

**/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests**

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the `/etc/vmware-tools/locations` file gets amended with this string:

```bash
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

### Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

### Guest Screen Saver

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 5.4

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 5.4 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 5.4:

- VMware Workstation
  FreeBSD 5.4 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  FreeBSD 5.4 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  FreeBSD 5.4 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 5.4:

- VMware Workstation
  FreeBSD 5.4 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  FreeBSD 5.4 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware Server
  FreeBSD 5.4 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 5.4 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.
Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**Known Issues**

**/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests**

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 5.3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 5.3 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 5.3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 5.3 – Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 5.3 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 5.3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit FreeBSD 5.3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 5.3 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 5.3 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 5.3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 5.3 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.
Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**Known Issues**

**/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests**

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the `/etc/vmware-tools/locations` file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 5.2

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 5.2 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 5.2:

- VMware Workstation
  FreeBSD 5.2 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- VMware ACE
  FreeBSD 5.2 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- VMware GSX Server
  FreeBSD 5.2 – GSX Server 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- VMware Server
  FreeBSD 5.2 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 5.2 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.
**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**Known Issues**

/\etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /\etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 5.1

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 5.1 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 5.1:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 5.1 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 5.1 – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  FreeBSD 5.1 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 5.1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 5.1 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

---

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

---

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.
VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Known Issues

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

Guest Screen Saver

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 5.0

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 5.0 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 5.0:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 5.0 – Workstation 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 5.0 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  FreeBSD 5.0 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 5.0 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 5.0 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.
VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Known Issues

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

Sound

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

Guest Screen Saver

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 4.11

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 4.11 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 4.11:

- VMware ESX Server
  FreeBSD 4.11– ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5

  Support Considerations
  - VMware recommends that you configure ESX Server virtual machines that use this guest operating system to use the vmx Ethernet adapter. See your product documentation for instructions.

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 4.11 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. In the FreeBSD Disklabel Editor step, do not use the installer’s default option A partitioning. Use option C to create the mounts. In order to install VMware Tools, you need more space in `/usr` than is provided by the installer’s defaults. Be sure your partitioning scheme includes at least 4,000,000 blocks for `/usr`.
4. Follow the rest of the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

Known Issues

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the `/etc/vmware-tools/locations` file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```
This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**
VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**
On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 4.10

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 4.10 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 4.10:

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - FreeBSD 4.10 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
  
  **Support Considerations**
  - VMware recommends that you configure ESX Server virtual machines that use this guest operating system to use the vmx Ethernet adapter. See your product documentation for instructions.

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 4.10 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. In the FreeBSD Disklabel Editor step, do not use the installer’s default option A partitioning. Use option C to create the mounts. In order to install VMware Tools, you need more space in /usr than is provided by the installer’s defaults. Be sure your partitioning scheme includes at least 4,000,000 blocks for /usr.
4. Follow the rest of the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

VMware Tools

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Known Issues

/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:

```
r
```
This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**
VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**
On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 4.9

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 4.9 operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 4.9:

- **VMware GSX Server**
  FreeBSD 4.9 – GSX Server 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware ESX Server**
  FreeBSD 4.9 – ESX 2.5

**Support Considerations**

- VMware recommends that you configure ESX Server virtual machines that use this guest operating system to use the vmx Ethernet adapter. See your product documentation for instructions.

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 4.9 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or GSX Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3. In the FreeBSD Disklabel Editor step, do not use the installer’s default option A partitioning. Use option C to create the mounts. In order to install VMware Tools, you need more space in /usr than is provided by the installer’s defaults. Be sure your partitioning scheme includes at least 4,000,000 blocks for /usr.
4. Follow the rest of the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

**Known Issues**

**/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests**

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the /etc/vmware-tools/locations file gets amended with this string:
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.
FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, and 4.8 operating systems.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, and 4.8:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2 or 4.8 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

**NOTE** FreeBSD 4.6 is not supported. Use FreeBSD 4.6.2 instead. It resolves an issue that interferes with installation of FreeBSD 4.6 in a virtual machine.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3 Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

In many FreeBSD distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running FreeBSD, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running FreeBSD**

1 If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.

2 In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:

```
alias ipv6 off
alias net-pf-10 off
```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests**

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the `/etc/vmware-tools/locations` file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.

**Guest Screen Saver**

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

**Migration to a Different Processor**

VMware recommends you do not migrate a FreeBSD virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of FreeBSD choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a FreeBSD virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a FreeBSD virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.
This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a FreeBSD installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3 operating systems.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3:

- **VMware Workstation**
  FreeBSD 4.0.4.1, 4.2, 4.3 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  FreeBSD 4.0.4.1, 4.2, 4.3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  FreeBSD 4.0.4.1, 4.2, 4.3 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  FreeBSD 4.0.4.1, 4.2, 4.3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**General Installation Notes**

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

The easiest method of installing FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2 or 4.3 in a virtual machine is to use the standard FreeBSD distribution CD.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** If you create your virtual machine with a virtual IDE disk, installation proceeds as it would on a physical machine. If you create your virtual machine with a SCSI virtual disk that is 2GB or larger, see “Setting the Disk Geometry for a FreeBSD SCSI Virtual Disk” on page 383.

**NOTE** With many FreeBSD guest operating systems, various problems have been observed when the BusLogic virtual SCSI adapter is used with VMware virtual machines. VMware recommends that you use the LSI Logic virtual SCSI adapter with this guest operating system.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the FreeBSD CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing FreeBSD.
3 Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical PC.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

**IPv6**

In many Linux distributions, if IPv6 is enabled, VMware Tools cannot be configured with `vmware-config-tools.pl` after installation. In this case, VMware Tools is unable to set the network device correctly for the virtual machine, and displays a message similar to:

```
Unloading pcnet32 module
unregister_netdevice: waiting for eth0 to become free
```

This message repeats continuously until you reboot the virtual machine. To prevent this problem in virtual machines running FreeBSD, disable IPv6 before installing VMware Tools.

**To disable IPv6 in a virtual machine running FreeBSD**

1. If the file `/etc/sysconfig/network` contains the line `NETWORKING_IPV6=yes`, change the line to `NETWORKING_IPV6=no`.
2. In the file `/etc/modules.conf`, add the following lines:
   ```
   alias ipv6 off
   alias net-pf-10 off
   ```

After you disable IPv6, you should be able to install and configure VMware Tools successfully.

**Known Issues**

**/etc/vmware-tools/locations File Grows with Each Boot of 64-bit FreeBSD Guests**

Each time you reboot a 64-bit FreeBSD guest, the `/etc/vmware-tools/locations` file gets amended with this string:

```
remove_file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
file /etc/vmware-tools/icu
```

This causes the file to grow with each reboot.

**Setting the Disk Geometry for a FreeBSD SCSI Virtual Disk**

If you install FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2 or 4.3 as the guest operating system on a 2GB or larger SCSI virtual disk, the guest operating system does not boot unless you take the special steps described in this section.

It fails to boot because the virtual disk geometry is not probed correctly by FreeBSD when you install the guest operating system. FreeBSD installs the boot loader in the wrong location on the virtual disk. When FreeBSD tries to boot, the FreeBSD boot loader asks the BIOS for important data that is now on a different section of the virtual disk, so FreeBSD cannot boot.

This problem has been fixed in FreeBSD 4.4. This and later versions correctly boot SCSI virtual disks of any size.

**To use FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2 or 4.3 in your virtual machine, do one of two things:**

- Use an IDE virtual disk in your virtual machine. You might need to add the IDE virtual disk to the virtual machine with the Configuration Editor.
- Set the disk geometry by hand when installing FreeBSD. These steps are outlined below.
To set the disk geometry manually

1. FreeBSD calculates an incorrect disk geometry before you arrive at the FDISK Partition Editor, as illustrated here.

2. To set the disk geometry, press G to select the option **Set Drive Geometry**. A dialog box appears, containing numbers like 2055/64/32, representing the incorrect geometry in cylinders, heads and sectors per head.

3. To calculate the correct geometry, find the total number of sectors by multiplying the number of cylinders, heads and sectors per head together, and then dividing the number of sectors by the correct number of heads and sectors per head.

   In the above illustration, the virtual disk is a 2055MB disk with 2055 cylinders, 64 heads and 32 sectors per head (these numbers represent the incorrect geometry). The product of these three numbers (2055 x 64 x 32) equals 4,208,640 sectors.

   To determine the correct geometry for the BusLogic compatible virtual SCSI adapter used by the virtual machine, calculate the number of cylinders, which is 4,208,640 sectors divided by the product of the actual number of heads and sectors per head (255 heads times 63 sectors per head). This results in a total of 261 actual cylinders (4208640/(255 * 63) = 261, rounded down).

4. You can now enter the correct geometry of 261 cylinders, 255 heads and 63 sectors per head by typing 261/255/63 in the dialog box. Then click **OK** and continue installing FreeBSD.

**Sound**

VMware has not tested sound support in FreeBSD.
Guest Screen Saver

On a FreeBSD host with an XFree86 3.x X server, it is best not to run a screen saver in the guest operating system. Guest screen savers that demand a lot of processing power can cause the X server on the host to freeze.

Migration to a Different Processor

VMware recommends you do not migrate a FreeBSD virtual machine between hosts when one host is running on an AMD processor and the other is running on an Intel processor.

During installation, many distributions of FreeBSD choose a kernel that is optimized for the specific processor on which it is being installed, and some distributions install a generic kernel by default, but provide architecture-specific kernels that the user can choose to install. The kernel might contain instructions that are available only on that processor. These instructions can have adverse effects when run on a host with the wrong type of processor.

Thus, a FreeBSD virtual machine created on a host with an AMD processor might not work if migrated to a host with an Intel processor. The reverse is also true: a FreeBSD virtual machine created on a host with an Intel processor might not work if migrated to a host with an AMD processor.

This problem is not specific to virtual machines and also occurs on physical computers. For example, if you move a hard drive with a FreeBSD installation from an AMD machine to an Intel machine, you are also likely to experience problems trying to boot from that drive.
NetWare 6.5 Server

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the NetWare 6.5 Server operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit NetWare 6.5 Server:

- **VMware Workstation**
  NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 1 – Workstation 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3
  NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 3 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 5 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 1 – Workstation 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3
  - Support Pack 3 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Support Pack 5 – Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Novell Open Enterprise Server – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 1 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 1 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 1 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 1 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  NetWare 6.5 Server, Support Pack 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 3 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - Support Pack 6 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Novell Open Enterprise Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
• Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 1 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9, 2.0, 2.0.1
• Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 2 – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

VMware ESX Server

NetWare 6.5 Server – ESX 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

• Support Pack 2 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0
• Support Pack 3 – ESX 3.0
• Support Pack 4(a) – ESX 2.5.3 (requires Upgrade Patch 1. See http://vmware.com/support/esx25/doc/esx-253-200605-patch.html.), 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3
• Support Pack 5 – ESX 2.5.3 (requires Upgrade Patch 1. See http://vmware.com/support/esx25/doc/esx-253-200605-patch.html.), 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
• Support Pack 7 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
• Support Pack 8 – ESX 2.5.5, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support

• Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 1 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
• Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
• Novell Open Enterprise Server 2 – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
• Novell Open Enterprise Server 2, Support Pack 1 – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

VMware Fusion

NetWare 6.5 Server – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support

• Support Pack 5 – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
• Support Pack 7 – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE When you create a virtual machine for NetWare 6.5 with Novell Open Enterprise Server on an ESX Server, select Novell NetWare for the guest operating system and Novell NetWare 6.x for the version.

You can install NetWare 6.5 in a virtual machine using the standard Novell NetWare 6.5 Operating System and Product CD-ROMs.
Consider the following issues:

- VMware recommends you install NetWare 6.5 on a computer with at least 512MB of memory.
- **Guests without Support Pack 1**: Be sure to read the Novell technical information document at support.novell.com/cgi-bin/search/searchtid.cgi?/2967370.htm. This document describes the steps necessary to download and install a NetWare patch that you must use when you install a NetWare 6.5 Server guest operating system without SP1.
- When you configure a virtual machine for a NetWare 6.5 guest, use the virtual LSI Logic SCSI adapter. NetWare 6.5 does not include a driver for the virtual BusLogic SCSI adapter.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

**Installation Steps**

1. Insert the Novell NetWare 6.5 Product CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing NetWare 6.5.
3. Read and accept the license agreement.

**NOTE** A few prompts appear before you reach the license agreement. Accept the defaults for installing NetWare, the CD-ROM drive type, how to restore the floppy drive and the run mode, and then continue.

4. When prompted, choose **IDE CD-ROM**.
5. Create a new boot partition. The guest operating system reboots. The installation continues.
   **VMware Workstation, VMware ACE and VMware GSX Server**: To configure IP networking, do one of the following:

- If you chose bridged networking for the virtual machine, enter its IP address.
  When NetWare tries to load the LAN driver (using pcntnw.lan), it fails because it broadcasts for its own IP address. This causes IP networking to fail.
  To work around this, open the System Console (press Ctrl+Esc) and type

  `set allow ip address duplicates=on`

  Press Alt+Esc to return to the installation.

- If you chose host-only networking for the virtual machine, look up the host machine’s IP address.
  At a command prompt on a Windows host, type `ipconfig /all`
  At a command prompt on a Linux host, type `ifconfig`

  Note the host’s IP address for VMNet1 and change the last octet so it is greater than the last octet in the IP address of the host.

  For example, if the host IP address is 192.168.160.1, the virtual machine’s IP address is 192.168.160.###, where ### is any number greater than 1 and less than 128.

  For the subnet mask, enter **255.255.255.0**.

  For the router gateway, enter the host’s IP address (192.168.160.1 in our example).

- If you chose network address translation (NAT) for the virtual machine, look up the host machine’s IP address.
At a command prompt on a Windows host, type

```
ipconfig /all
```

At a command prompt on a Linux host, type

```
ifconfig
```

Note the host’s IP address for VMnet8 and change the last octet so it is greater than the last octet in the IP address of the host.

For example, if the host IP address is 192.168.160.1, the virtual machine’s IP address is 192.168.160.###, where ## is any number greater than 2 and less than 128.

For the subnet mask, enter `255.255.255.0`.

For the router gateway, enter the NAT service’s IP address (192.168.160.2 in our example).

Note that with Network Address Translation, there are 2 IP addresses in use on the host:

- The IP address assigned to the interface for VMnet8 (which shows up in the `ipconfig` output with a “.1” in the last octet).
- The IP address used by the NAT device itself (which always uses “.2” as the last octet).

7 Finish the installation by following the on-screen instructions.

After you finish the installation, install VMware Tools, which installs and loads the CPU idler program.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

Installing VMware Tools also installs and loads the CPU idle program. NetWare servers do not idle the CPU when the operating system is idle. As a result, a virtual machine takes CPU time from the host regardless of whether the NetWare server software is idle or busy. To prevent unnecessary slowdowns, VMware recommends that, after you install VMware Tools, you keep the NetWare CPU idle program loaded.

**Known Issues**

**Regaining Keyboard and Mouse Control After Reboot**

Whenever you reboot the guest operating system, it can take up to six minutes before you can regain control of the keyboard or mouse.

**Navigating in Text Mode**

If you are using text mode and want to browse the file system, you might notice that the arrow keypad and Insert key do not allow you to navigate directories. To work around this issue, use the numeric keypad, but first turn off the number lock by pressing the Num Lock key.

**NetWare 6.5 Server SP3 and SP5 Installations Hang After Selection of Ethernet Driver on a Guest with Non-Passthrough Raw Device Mapping**

When you install NetWare Server 6.5 SP3 or SP5 on a guest with non-passthrough Raw Device Mapping (RDM), the installation might hang after you select an Ethernet driver. VMware recommends that you use passthrough RDM with NetWare Server 6.5 SP3 and SP5.
NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation

If you install Novell NetWare Server in a Raw Device Mapping (RDM) virtual machine, and you use the same logical unit number (LUN) previously used to install Windows NT in an RDM virtual machine on the same host, the installation will take place on an existing FAT16 partition that was created by the prior Window NT installation. The installation will proceed correctly until the final reboot, when it will load the Windows NT master boot record (MBR), but will crash to bluescreen due to an inaccessible device error. Even though NetWare is installed, you will not be able to access the NetWare operating system.

To work around this problem, format the LUN before you begin installing the NetWare virtual machine. This ensures that the old FAT16 partition is formatted and that NetWare will reboot correctly.

- Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 1 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0


In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly,” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Web site. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.
NetWare 6.0 Server

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the NetWare 6.0 Server operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit NetWare 6.0 Server:

- **VMware Workstation**
  - NetWare 6.0 Server, Support Pack 3 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3
  - NetWare 6.0 Server, Support Pack 4 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1
  - NetWare 6.0 Server, Support Pack 5 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - **Update Support**
    - Support Pack 3 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3
    - Support Pack 4 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1
    - Support Pack 5 – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - **Additional Support**
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  - NetWare 6.0 Server, Support Pack 3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  - **Update Support**
    - Support Pack 3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  - NetWare 6.0 Server, Support Pack 3 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  - **Update Support**

- **VMware Server**
  - NetWare 6.0 Server, Support Pack 5 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - **Update Support**
    - Support Pack 5 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  - **Additional Support**
    - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX Server**
  - NetWare 6.0 Server – ESX 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Update Support

- Support Pack 3 – ESX 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5
- Support Pack 5 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 1 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support

- Support Pack 1 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Support Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install NetWare 6.0 in a virtual machine using the standard Novell NetWare 6.0 CD-ROM.

Consider the following issues:

- VMware recommends you install NetWare 6 on a computer with at least 256MB of memory.
- In the NetWare installation process, you must boot from the installation CD twice—once to format the virtual machine’s disk drive, and then a second time to install files from the CD.
- On the reboot, you see the message Operating System not found and a dialog box with the message No bootable CD, floppy or hard disk was detected.
- In order to boot from the CD the second time, you must change the boot order.
- As the virtual machine boots, click inside the virtual machine window. When the VMware logo appears, press Esc. Use the arrow keys to select the CD drive as the boot device, and then press Enter.
- When you configure a virtual machine for a NetWare 6.0 guest, use the virtual LSI Logic SCSI adapter. NetWare 6.0 does not include a driver for the virtual BusLogic SCSI adapter.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1. Insert the Novell NetWare 6.0 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing NetWare 6.0.
3. Read and accept the license agreement.
4. When prompted, choose **IDE CD-ROM**.
5. Create a new boot partition. The guest operating system reboots.
6. To configure IP networking, do one of the following:
   - If you chose bridged networking for the virtual machine, enter its IP address.
     - When NetWare tries to load the LAN driver (using `pcntnw.1on`), it fails because it broadcasts for its own IP address. This causes IP networking to fail.
     - To work around this, open the System Console (press Ctrl+Esc) and type
       ```
       set allow ip address duplicates=on
       ```
Press Alt+Esc to return to the installation.

- If you chose host-only networking for the virtual machine, look up the host machine's IP address.

  At a command prompt on a Windows host, type
  ```
  ipconfig /all
  ```
  At a command prompt on a Linux host, type
  ```
  ifconfig
  ```

  Note the host's IP address for VMnet1 and change the last octet so it is greater than the last octet in the IP address of the host.

  For example, if the host IP address is 192.168.160.1, the virtual machine's IP address is 192.168.160.###, where ### is any number greater than 1 and less than 128.

  For the subnet mask, enter 255.255.255.0.

  For the router gateway, enter the host's IP address (192.168.160.1 in this example).

- If you chose network address translation (NAT) for the virtual machine, look up the host machine's IP address.

  At a command prompt on a Windows host, type
  ```
  ipconfig /all
  ```
  At a command prompt on a Linux host, type
  ```
  ifconfig
  ```

  Note the host's IP address for VMnet8 and change the last octet so it is greater than the last octet in the IP address of the host.

  For example, if the host IP address is 192.168.160.1, the virtual machine's IP address is 192.168.160.###, where ### is any number greater than 2 and less than 128.

  For the subnet mask, enter 255.255.255.0.

  For the router gateway, enter the NAT service's IP address (192.168.160.2 in this example).

  Note that with Network Address Translation, there are two IP addresses in use on the host:

  - The IP address assigned to the interface for VMnet8 appears in the `ifconfig` output with a 1 in the last octet.
  - The IP address used by the NAT device itself always uses 2 as the last octet.

7 Finish the installation.

After you finish the installation, install VMware Tools, which installs and loads the CPU idler program.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Installing VMware Tools also installs and loads the CPU idle program. NetWare servers do not idle the CPU when the operating system is idle. As a result, a virtual machine takes CPU time from the host regardless of whether the NetWare server software is idle or busy. To prevent unnecessary slowdowns, VMware recommends that, after you install VMware Tools, you keep the NetWare CPU idle program loaded.
Known Issues

Disconnected VMware Tools ISO File
After the virtual machine reboots while installing VMware Tools, make sure the virtual machine releases the VMware Tools ISO image. Choose Edit > Removable Devices > CD-ROM, and if the CD-ROM's configuration shows the VMware Tools ISO image, change it back to Use physical drive.

Installation Failure on First Try
During the installation of the guest operating system, if you get an ABEND error in the JVM.NLM module, try installing the operating system again. This is a third-party problem that occurs rarely, but when it does, it occurs during installation only. Once you complete the installation, you should not see this error again.

Grabbing the Mouse Pointer
If the virtual machine is unable to grab or ungrab the mouse, it might be due to a Java class not being referenced in the virtual machine. In the NetWare 6.0 guest operating system, check the xinitrc file, which is located in sys:\java\nwgfx\.

To grab or ungrab the mouse pointer
1. In the virtual machine, switch to the system console, and then type:
   ```
   load edit
   ```
2. Press the Insert key to browse to the sys:\java\nwgfx\xinitrc file.
3. In the file, look for this line:
   ```
   java -classpath "$JAVA_HOME\classes\VMWtool.jar:$CLASSPATH VMWTool -iw
   ```
4. If the line does not exist, add it to the file. Press the Esc key. Save the file.
5. Restart the guest operating system. In the system console, type
   ```
   restart server.
   ```
   The virtual machine should be able to grab and ungrab the mouse now.

Cannot Browse File System with Arrow Keys
If you are using text mode and want to browse the file system, you might notice that the arrow keypad and Insert key do not allow you to navigate directories. To work around this issue, use the numeric keypad, but first turn off the number lock by pressing the Num Lock key.

NetWare 6.0 Server SP5 Crashes When Stack Dump Exceeds the Valid Memory Limit
ESX Server 3.x: Virtual machines running NetWare 6.0 Server SP5 crash when a stack dump exceeds the valid memory limit. This problem might be accompanied by either of the error messages:

Problem executing SYMCJIT.NLM or
cdbe gremlin process crashed due to invalid opcode

This problem has been observed more frequently on guests with non-passthrough Raw Device Mapping (RDM). To work around this problem, reinstall NetWare 6.0 Server SP5.

NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation
If you install Novell NetWare Server in a Raw Device Mapping (RDM) virtual machine, and you use the same logical unit number (LUN) previously used to install Windows NT in an RDM virtual machine on the same host, the installation will take place on an existing FAT16 partition that was created by the prior Window NT installation. The installation will proceed correctly until the final reboot, when it will load the Windows NT master boot record (MBR), but will crash to bluescreen due to an inaccessible device error. Even though NetWare is installed, you will not be able to access the NetWare operating system.
To work around this problem, format the LUN before you begin installing the NetWare virtual machine. This ensures that the old FAT16 partition is formatted and that NetWare will reboot correctly.


In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly,” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Web site. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.
NetWare 5.1 Server

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the NetWare 5.1 Server operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit NetWare 5.1 Server:

- **VMware Workstation**
  NetWare 5.1 Server, Support Pack 6 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3
  NetWare 5.1 Server, Support Pack 8 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 6 – Workstation 4.0, 4.0.1, 4.0.2, 4.0.5, 4.5, 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3
  - Support Pack 8 – Workstation 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  NetWare 5.1 Server, Support Pack 3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 3 – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server**
  NetWare 5.1 Server, Support Pack 6 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 6 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  NetWare 5.1 Server, Support Pack 8 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 8 – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **VMware ESX**
  NetWare 5.1 Server – ESX 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 7 – ESX 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
  - Support Pack 8 – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Choosing and Installing Guest Operating Systems

Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 1 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Novell Open Enterprise Server, Support Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
Update Support
- Support Pack 1 – ESX 2.5.2, 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Support Pack 2 – ESX 2.5.4, 2.5.5, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install NetWare 5.1 in a virtual machine using the standard Novell NetWare 5.1 CD-ROM.

Consider the following issues:
- VMware recommends you install NetWare 5.1 on a computer with at least 256MB of memory.
- For SCSI support, be sure to download the latest LSI Logic driver as described in “Updated LSI Logic SCSI Driver” on page 398.

When you configure a virtual machine for a NetWare 5.1 guest, use the virtual LSI Logic SCSI adapter. NetWare 5.1 Support Pack 6 does not include a driver for the virtual BusLogic SCSI adapter.

- In the NetWare installation process, you must boot from the installation CD twice—once to format the virtual machine’s disk drive, and a second time to install files from the CD.

On the reboot, you see the message Operating System not found and a dialog box with the message No bootable CD, floppy or hard disk was detected.

In order to boot from the CD the second time, you must change the boot order.

As the virtual machine boots, click inside the virtual machine window. When the VMware logo appears, press Esc. Use the arrow keys to select the CD drive as the boot device, and then press Enter.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

1 Insert the Novell NetWare 5.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2 Power on the virtual machine to start installing NetWare 5.1.
3 Read and accept the license agreement.
4 Create a new boot partition. The guest operating system reboots. The installation continues.
5 **VMware ESX Server:** Skip to Step 6.

**VMware Workstation, VMware ACE and VMware GSX Server:** To configure IP networking, do one of the following:

- If you chose bridged networking for the virtual machine, enter its IP address.

  When NetWare tries to load the LAN driver (using pctrnw.lan), it fails because it broadcasts for its own IP address. This causes IP networking to fail.

  To work around this, open the System Console (press Ctrl+Esc) and type

  ```
  set allow ip address duplicates=on
  ```

  Press Alt+Esc to return to the installation.

- If you chose host-only networking for the virtual machine, look up the host machine’s IP address.
At a command prompt on a Windows host, type

```
ipconfig /all
```

At a command prompt on a Linux host, type

```
ifconfig
```

Note the host’s IP address for VMnet1 and change the last octet so it is greater than the last octet in the IP address of the host.

For example, if the host IP address is 192.168.160.1, and then the virtual machine’s IP address is 192.168.160.###, where ### is any number greater than 1 and less than 128.

For the subnet mask, enter **255.255.255.0**.

For the router gateway, enter the host’s IP address (192.168.160.1 in this example).

- If you chose network address translation (NAT) for the virtual machine, look up the host machine’s IP address.

At a command prompt on a Windows host, type

```
ipconfig /all
```

At a command prompt on a Linux host, type

```
ifconfig
```

Note the host’s IP address for VMnet8 and change the last octet so it is greater than the last octet in the IP address of the host.

For example, if the host IP address is 192.168.160.1, the virtual machine’s IP address is 192.168.160.###, where ### is any number greater than 2 and less than 128.

For the subnet mask, enter **255.255.255.0**.

For the router gateway, enter the NAT service’s IP address (192.168.160.2 in this example).

Note that with Network Address Translation, there are two IP addresses in use on the host:

- The IP address assigned to the interface for VMnet8 shows up in the `ipconfig` output with a 1 in the last octet.
- The IP address used by the NAT device itself always uses 2 as the last octet.

6 Finish the installation by following the on-screen instructions.

After you finish the installation, install VMware Tools, which installs and loads the CPU idler program.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at [http://kb.vmware.com/ kb/340](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340).

Installing VMware Tools also installs and loads the CPU idle program. NetWare servers do not idle the CPU when the operating system is idle. As a result, a virtual machine takes CPU time from the host regardless of whether the NetWare server software is idle or busy. To prevent unnecessary slowdowns, VMware recommends that, after you install VMware Tools, you keep the NetWare CPU idle program loaded.

**Known Issues**

**Updated LSI Logic SCSI Driver**

If you are running NetWare 5.1 Support Pack 6, you should install the latest LSI Logic SCSI driver. For information on obtaining and installing the driver, see [http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1181](http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1181).
Disconnecting VMware Tools ISO File

After the virtual machine reboots while installing VMware Tools, make sure the virtual machine releases the VMware Tools ISO image. Choose Edit › Removable Devices › CD-ROM, and if the CD-ROM's configuration shows the VMware Tools ISO image, change it back to Use physical drive.

Pentium 4 Host Page Fault

During the installation of the guest operating system on an Intel Pentium 4 host, you might encounter a Page Fault error. If this error occurs, you must apply a NetWare 5.1 patch on the host machine. For details, see support.novell.com/cgi-bin/search/searchtid.cgi?/2958220.htm.

Cannot Mount a CD-ROM as a Volume

If you are not running NetWare 5.1 with Support Pack 6, you cannot mount the CD-ROM as a volume.

To mount a CD-ROM with the support pack installed, do one of the following

- Set the primary hard drive to IDE 0:0 and the CD-ROM drive to IDE 0:1.
- Copy the original driver files (IDEATA.DD and IDEATA.HAM) from the Drivers\Storage directory of the installation CD-ROM that shipped with NetWare 5.1 to the c:\nserver directory.

NOTE If you cannot mount CD-ROMs, you cannot install VMware Tools in the virtual machine.

For more information, see support.novell.com/cgi-bin/search/searchtid.cgi?/10058758.htm.

Using More than One Virtual Network Adapter on the Same Network

If you use more than one virtual network adapter connected to the same network, error messages appear in the System Console.

Examples of error messages you might see include:

- Router configuration error detected
- Router at node 000C29D02242 claims network 511F827 should be 2010F5EA
- Router configuration error detected
- Router at node 000C29D0224C claims network 2010F5EA should be 511F827

If this occurs, then completely disconnect the virtual machine from the network, and ask your network administrator for the correct network number.

Grabbing the Mouse Pointer

If the virtual machine is unable to grab or ungrab the mouse, it might be due to a Java class not being referenced in the virtual machine. In the NetWare 5.1 guest operating system, check the xinitrc file, which is located in sys:\java\nwgfx\.

To grab or ungrab the mouse pointer

1. In the virtual machine, switch to the system console, and then type:
   - load edit
2. Press the Insert key to browse to the sys:\java\nwgfx\xinitrc file.
3. In the file, look for this line:
   - java -classpath $JAVA_HOME\classes\VMWtool.jar;$CLASSPATH VMWTool -iw
4. If the line does not exist, add it to the file. Press the Esc key. Save the file.
5. Restart the guest operating system. In the system console, type
   - restart server
   - The virtual machine should be able to grab and ungrab the mouse now.
Cannot Browse File System with Arrow Keys

If you are using text mode and want to browse the file system, you might notice that the arrow keypad and Insert key do not allow you to navigate directories. To work around this issue, use the numeric keypad, but first turn off the number lock by pressing the Num Lock key.

NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation

If you install Novell NetWare Server in a Raw Device Mapping (RDM) virtual machine, and you use the same logical unit number (LUN) previously used to install Windows NT in an RDM virtual machine on the same host, the installation will take place on an existing FAT16 partition that was created by the prior Window NT installation. The installation will proceed correctly until the final reboot, when it will load the Windows NT master boot record (MBR), but will crash to bluescreen due to an inaccessible device error. Even though NetWare is installed, you will not be able to access the NetWare operating system.

To work around this problem, format the LUN before you begin installing the NetWare virtual machine. This ensures that the old FAT16 partition is formatted and that NetWare will reboot correctly.


In some cases, networking does not work properly in a copied or cloned virtual machine. If you experience this problem, see “Cloned machine does not boot up properly,” (Document ID: 3048119) on the Novell Web site. You should be able to create a template using these instructions and deploy it to new virtual machines without any networking problems.
NetWare 4.2 Server

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the NetWare 4.2 Server operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit NetWare 4.2 Server:

- **VMware Workstation**
  NetWare 4.2 Server – Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- **VMware ACE**
  NetWare 4.2 Server – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
- **VMware GSX Server**
  NetWare 4.2 Server, Support Pack 9 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
  Update Support
  - Support Pack 9 – GSX Server 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1
- **VMware Server**
  NetWare 4.2 Server – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

You can install NetWare 4.2 in a virtual machine using the standard Novell NetWare 4.2 installation CD. VMware recommends you install NetWare 4.2 on a host with at least 256MB of memory.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Creating and Configuring the NetWare Virtual Machine

1. If you created this virtual machine on a Linux host, open the configuration file (*.cfg) in a text editor and add the following line:
   ```
   gui.iconLEDs = false
   ```
   This removes all the LED icons in the console window, which prevents the virtual machine display from appearing incorrectly when you power it on while the host is in 8 bit/256 color mode.

2. Install the guest operating system and VMware Tools, which includes the CPU idler program. See below for details.

Installation Steps

1. VMware recommends that you install MS-DOS 5.0 or higher in a small (50MB FAT16) partition as described in these guidelines. The rest of the free space on the virtual disk is used for the NetWare partition. Even if the virtual machine is to run NetWare most of the time, it is a good idea to install a CPU idler program.

2. Install a CD-ROM driver or CD-ROM software for MS-DOS. If you have problems setting up the MS-DOS virtual machine to access the CD-ROM drive, you can use the mntcd91.sys driver, which can be found at www.mitsumi.com. Under Drivers and Manuals look for ide158.exe.
Modify the config.sys and autoexec.bat files on your MS-DOS boot floppy (along with the mscdex.exe file) as shown below. If you are using a MS-DOS boot partition, adjust the drive letters accordingly.

```
config.sys
device=himem.sys /testmem:off
device=NEC_IDE.SYS /D:MSCD001
files=12
buffers=15
stacks=9,256
lastdrive=z
```

```
autoexec.bat
@ECHO OFF
set EXPAND=YES
SET DIRCMD=/O:N
cls
set temp=c:\
set tmp=c:\
path=c:\
IF "%config%"=="NOCD" GOTO QUIT
a:\NWDEX.EXE /D:mscd001
:QUIT
```

After you have configured the CD-ROM software, verify that the virtual machine can read a CD from the host system's CD-ROM drive.

4. If the virtual machine is not running, power it on and wait for MS-DOS to finish its boot process.

5. Insert the NetWare 4.2 CD in the CD-ROM drive on the GSX Server host.

6. In the virtual machine, at the MS-DOS prompt, run fdisk to create a partition for NetWare.

```
A:\>fdisk
```

7. After you create the partition, reboot the virtual machine. Press Ctrl+Alt+Insert.

8. Format the C: drive. Type the following:

```
format c: /s /x
```

9. Copy the following files to your C: drive from your floppy. Type the following:

```
Copy autoexec.bat c:
Copy config.sys c:
Copy himem.sys c:
Copy mscdex.exe c:
Copy nec_ide.sys c:
```

10. Modify the autoexec.bat file so it points to the CD-ROM directory on the hard drive instead of the floppy drive.

```
a To modify autoexec.bat, type the following at the C: prompt:
a:edit autoexec.bat
b The line
a:\NWDEX.EXE /D:mscd001
Must be changed to
c:\NWDEX.EXE /D:mscd001
c Save the changes you just made.
cd d:
```

11. Run INSTALL.BAT to start the NetWare server installation process. Install the software in a virtual machine as you would for a physical PC.
If the virtual machine has been configured for networking (bridged, host-only, NAT or custom), the installation program detects a PCI Ethernet adapter and prompts you with a list of possible drivers. At this point, do not select or load any LAN drivers; press the F3 key to continue installing without a LAN driver.

**NOTE** Once the installation has been completed, you can load and bind the appropriate LAN driver. Selecting or loading a LAN driver during the NetWare 4.2 installation might hang the installation process.

Finish the NetWare 4.2 installation by following the on-screen instructions. Then shut down the server and type exit to return to a MS-DOS prompt. After you finish the installation, install VMware Tools, which installs and loads the CPU idler program.

**VMware Tools**

Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system. In NetWare 4.2 virtual machines, VMware Tools provides CPU idling, sends a heartbeat from the guest operating system to the host and gives the virtual machine the ability to be gracefully powered on or off. For details, see the manual for your VMware product or follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340.

Installing VMware Tools also installs and loads the CPU idle program. NetWare servers do not idle the CPU when the operating system is idle. As a result, a virtual machine takes CPU time from the host regardless of whether the NetWare server software is idle or busy. To prevent unnecessary slowdowns, VMware recommends that, after you install VMware Tools, you keep the NetWare CPU idle program loaded.

**Known Issues**

**NetWare Server Guest Inaccessible If Installed as RDM Virtual Machine Using the Same LUN as a Prior Windows NT RDM Guest Installation**

If you install Novell NetWare Server in a Raw Device Mapping (RDM) virtual machine, and you use the same logical unit number (LUN) previously used to install Windows NT in an RDM virtual machine on the same host, the installation will take place on an existing FAT16 partition that was created by the prior Window NT installation. The installation will proceed correctly until the final reboot, when it will load the Windows NT master boot record (MBR), but will crash to bluescreen due to an inaccessible device error. Even though NetWare is installed, you will not be able to access the NetWare operating system.

To work around this problem, format the LUN before you begin installing the NetWare virtual machine. This ensures that the old FAT16 partition is formatted and that NetWare will reboot correctly.
Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms operating system.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms:

- **VMware Workstation**
  Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Update Support
  - Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) – experimental support on Workstation 5.5.3
  - Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Solaris 10 5/08 (Update 5) – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  - Solaris 10 10/08 (Update 6) – Workstation 6.5.2 (Workstation 6.5.2 does not include PBMs or provide an easy install.)
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE**
  Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2
  Update Support
  - Solaris 10 5/08 (Update 5) – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server** – experimental support only
  Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – GSX Server 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Update Support
  - Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  - Solaris 10 8/07 (Update 4) – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Experimental Support
  Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Update Support
  - Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
■ Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

Additional Support
■ SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

■ VMware ESX Server

Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Update Support
■ Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ Solaris 10 8/07 (Update 4) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3 (requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.), 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ Solaris 10 05/08 (Update 5) – ESX 3.0.1 (requires Patch ESX-1005108. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1005108.), 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1005110. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1005110.), 3.0.3 (requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.), 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ Solaris 10 10/08 (Update 6) – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ Solaris 10 5/09 (Update 7) – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

Additional Support
■ SMP – full support on ESX 3.0, 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
■ vmxnet3 network adapter – supports all Solaris 10 releases

■ VMware Fusion

Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

Update Support
■ Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
■ Solaris 10 05/08 (Update 5) – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

64-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 64-bit Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms:

■ VMware Workstation

Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

Update Support
■ Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) – Workstation 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
■ Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) – Workstation 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
■ Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – experimental support on Workstation 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
■ Solaris 10 5/08 (Update 5) – Workstation 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
- Solaris 10 10/08 (Update 6) – Workstation 6.5.2 (Workstation 6.5.2 does not include PBMs or provide an easy install.)

**Additional Support**
- SMP – 2-way experimental support on Workstation 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

**VMware ACE**
Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – ACE 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

**Update Support**
- Solaris 10 5/08 (Update 5) – ACE 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

**VMware Server**
Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

**Update Support**
- Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
- Solaris 10 8/07 (Update 4) – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

**Additional Support**
- SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

**Experimental Support**
Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**Update Support**
- Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**Additional Support**
- SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

**VMware ESX Server**
Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

**Update Support**
- Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Solaris 10 8/07 (Update 4) – ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3 (requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.), 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Solaris 10 5/08 (Update 5) – ESX 3.0.1 (requires Patch ESX-1005108. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1005108.), 3.0.2 (requires Patch ESX-1005110. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1005110.), 3.0.3 (requires Patch ESX303-200808405-BG. See http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1006036.), 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Solaris 10 10/08 (Update 6) – ESX supported on 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- Solaris 10 5/09 (Update 7) – ESX 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5 U4, 4.0

**Additional Support**
- SMP – full support on ESX 3.0.1, 3.0.2, 3.0.3, 3.5, 3.5 U1, 3.5 U2, 3.5 U3, 3.5 U4, 4.0
- VMXNET3 network adapter – supports all Solaris 10 releases
VMware Fusion
Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 platforms – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
Update Support
- Solaris 10 11/06 (Update 3) – Fusion 1.0, 1.1, 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5
- Solaris 10 05/08 (Update 5) – Fusion 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5

General Installation Notes
Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

VMware products support only the version for x86 platforms. You cannot install the version for SPARC platforms in a VMware virtual machine.

The easiest method of installing the Solaris 10 Operating System in a virtual machine is to use the standard Solaris 10 for x86 installation media. The notes below describe an installation using the CD set or DVD. If your VMware product supports it, you can also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

Memory Requirements for Solaris 10
VMware Server or ESX Server: Solaris 10 requires more memory for successful installation than previous Solaris versions. For x86-based systems:
- Starting with the Solaris 10 1/06 release, Sun recommends 512MB of memory. 256MB is the minimum requirement.
- For the Solaris 10 3/05 release, Sun recommends 256MB of memory. 128MB is the minimum requirement.

Before upgrading a virtual machine's guest operating system to the Solaris 10 1/06 release or later, increase the virtual machine’s RAM to at least 256MB. See your VMware product documentation for instructions. For more information see the System Requirements and Recommendations for Solaris 10 Installation, on the Sun Web site at: http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/doc/817-0544/6mgbagb0v?a=view

NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps
1. Insert the Solaris 10 Operating System for x86 Platforms DVD or the Solaris 10 Software 1 CD in the DVD or CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Solaris 10.
3. Follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

This completes basic installation of the Solaris 10 guest operating system.

VMware Tools (ESX Server 3.x Only)
Be sure to install VMware Tools in your guest operating system, and reboot the virtual machine See “Known Issues,” for information that could affect your VMware Tools installation. Follow the appropriate link in the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/340 to determine where to find VMware Tools information appropriate to Solaris 10.

NOTE Support for VMware Tools in Solaris 10 prior to Solaris 10 1/06 is experimental.
Known Issues

Faults Reported on Solaris 10 and Solaris 10 Update 1

ESX 3.0.1: For a description of the guest kernel fault reports, see the knowledgebase article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/3605018.

ESX Server 3.x Network Adapter Driver Support for 32-Bit and 64-Bit Solaris 10 Guests

32-bit Solaris 10 guests support the Flexible network adapter driver. If VMware Tools is installed on the guest, the adapter driver identifies itself as vmxnet. If VMware Tools has not been installed on the guest, the adapter driver identifies itself as pcn.

After installing Solaris 10 on a virtual machine, the pcn driver appears. Install VMware Tools and reboot the virtual machine to ensure that the default pcn driver switches to vmxnet.

64-bit Solaris 10 guests support only the e1000 network adapter driver.

Using Solaris 10 in 32-Bit Mode on a 64-Bit Host

On a 64-bit host, when you install or run Solaris 10 as a guest operating system, Solaris 10 automatically attempts to install or boot up in 64-bit mode. To force Solaris 10 to boot up in 32-bit mode on a 64-bit host, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2074. To force Solaris 10 to install as a 32-bit guest on a 64-bit host, see the knowledge base article at http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1975.

Display Too Small After Installation

After installation, the Solaris 10 guest operating system starts with a display resolution of 640 x 480. When you install VMware Tools, the display will automatically be adjusted to an appropriate resolution.

VMware Tools is currently supported only for ESX Server 3.x. If you are using another VMware product that does not support VMware Tools for Solaris, you can switch to the Xsun X server to get a 1024 x 768 display (256 colors).

To change your display

1. Log in as root and run the keyboard, display, and mouse configuration program from a command prompt.

   kdmconfig

2. Use the arrow keys and spacebar to select Xsun, and then press F2 to continue.

3. The configuration program detects the virtual machine's configuration and should display results similar to the following list:

   Video Device: VMware Inc vmware0405
   Video Driver: XF86-VMWARE
   Resolution/colors: 1024X768 256 colors @70 hz
   Monitor type: Multifrequency 56 khz

   Press F3 to accept the configuration.

4. Exit the current log-in session. The next time CDE or the Java Desktop System starts, Xsun runs with a resolution of 1024 x 768.

PAE Message During Installation

VMware Workstation 5.0: If you are installing the guest operating system on a VMware Workstation, 5.0 or lower, on a host computer that has PAE technology, you might get an error message. The error message indicates the guest operating system is trying to use PAE. Discontinue the installation process if this occurs, and enable PAE for the affected virtual machine.
To enable PAE for the virtual machine

1. Make sure the virtual machine is powered off.

2. Edit the configuration (.vmx) file for the virtual machine by adding the following line to the file:
   `paevm="true"

3. Power on the virtual machine and install the guest operating system.

Performance Problems in ESX Server 3.x Virtual Machines with Four Virtual Processors on Hosts with Hyperthreading

ESX Server 3.x: On ESX Server 3.x hosts with CPU hyperthreading, Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) virtual machines with four virtual processors experience significant degradation in performance, in both the time it takes for installation and the time it takes to write to disk. To minimize the impact on performance for Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) virtual machines with four virtual processors, VMware recommends that you use a host machine with four physical processors, rather than a host with two hyperthreaded processors.

Solaris 10 Guests Might Become Unresponsive When Halted

ESX Server 3.x: When you halt a Solaris 10 virtual machine, it might become unresponsive. This occurs because, while halting, the guest is unable to enter VGA screen mode and remains in SVGA screen mode. If the virtual machine remains unresponsive, you can work around this problem by powering off the virtual machine and powering it back on again.

Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) and Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) Guests with Virtual SMP Might Hang When Powering On

Virtual machines running Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) or Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2), with Virtual SMP and either two or four virtual processors might occasionally hang when powering on. If this happens, reboot the virtual machine. This should fix the problem with no data loss.

Solaris 10 Guest Cannot Eject ISO Image Mounted as CD-ROM

In CDE and Java Desktop Environments, when an ISO image is mounted as a CDROM device, the file manager (in CDE) and Nautilus (in Java Desktop) programs let you view the contents of the CDROM. Ejecting the device using any of these programs fails. In CDE, the File Manager program menu has an Eject option. Clicking that option does not eject the CDROM. In Java Desktop, right-clicking the CDROM icon (on the desktop) and then clicking Eject does not eject the CDROM.

64-Bit Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) and Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) Fail with Triple Fault on Intel Pentium M-Based Systems Merom, Woodcrest, and Conroe

This problem occurs not only in virtual machines but also when you attempt to run Solaris 10 1/06 (Update 1) and Solaris 10 6/06 (Update 2) directly on Intel Pentium M-Based Merom, Woodcrest, and Conroe systems. It is expected that Sun will correct this problem in a future update of Solaris 10. In the meantime, Sun has provided a patch, Kernel Update 118855-19, to correct this problem. Depending on your Solaris installation, this patch may require any or all of the following dependent patches: 121264-01, 118844-30, 118344-13, 117435-02, 119255-27. Information on downloading and installing Solaris patches is in the article “Adding a Solaris Patch,” available (at the time this document was published) from the Sun Web site at:

NOTE To apply Kernel Update 118855-19, you must boot the virtual machine in 32-bit mode. For instructions on forcing a Solaris 10 virtual machine on a 64-bit host machine to boot in 32-bit mode, see the VMware Knowledge Base: http://kb.vmware.com/kb/2074
Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for the Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Solaris 9 Operating System for x86 Platform Edition:

- **VMware Workstation** – experimental support only
  Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition – Workstation 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 5.0, 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on Workstation 5.5, 5.5.1, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.5.4, 5.5.5, 5.5.6, 5.5.7, 5.5.8, 5.5.9, 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, 6.0.3, 6.0.4, 6.0.5, 6.5, 6.5.1, 6.5.2

- **VMware ACE** – experimental support only
  Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition – ACE 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 2.0, 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 2.0.3, 2.0.4, 2.0.5, 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.5.2

- **VMware GSX Server** – experimental support only
  Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition – GSX Server 3.1, 3.2, 3.2.1

- **VMware Server**
  Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition – VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 2.0, 2.0.1

Experimental Support

- Solaris 9 Operating System x86 Platform Edition – VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on VMware Server 1.0, 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 1.0.5, 1.0.6, 1.0.7, 1.0.8, 1.0.9

- **ESX Server** – experimental support only
  Update Support
  - Solaris 9 09/02 (Update 1) – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 9 12/02 (Update 2) – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 9 04/03 (Update 3) – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 9 08/03 (Update 4) – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 9 12/03 (Update 5) – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 9 04/04 (Update 6) – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 9 09/04 (Update 7) – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 9 09/05 (Update 8) – ESX 4.0
  Additional Support
  - SMP – 2-way support on ESX 4.0
General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

VMware products support only the x86 Platform Edition. You cannot install the SPARC Platform Edition in a VMware virtual machine.

The easiest method of installing the Solaris 9 Operating System in a virtual machine is to use the standard Solaris x86 Platform Edition Installation CD. The notes below describe an installation using the CD. If your VMware product supports it, you might also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, be sure that you have already created and configured a new virtual machine.

NOTE If you want to use a SCSI hard disk in your virtual machine, configure the virtual machine to use the LSI Logic adapter and use Solaris 9 9/04 or a later release. An LSI Logic driver is included in releases beginning with Solaris 9 9/04. If you use an earlier release of Solaris 9 and configure the virtual machine to use a SCSI hard disk, you must get the LSI Logic driver and install it as an install time update. To locate the driver, go to the LSI Logic download page at www.lsi.com/support/download_center/ and choose LSI53C1030 from the Select a Specific Product drop-down list.

NOTE If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server or VMware Server—on which you are running the virtual machine.

Installation Steps

In most respects, you should follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

1. Insert the Solaris 9 x86 Platform Edition installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Solaris 9.
4. In the Boot Tasks screen, use the arrow keys to select View/Edit Property Settings. Press Enter to select it, and press F2 to continue.
5. Use the arrow keys to select the property ata-dma-enabled. Press Enter to select it and press F3 to change the value.
6. Type 1 and press Enter to enable DMA at the Specify Value prompt.
8. Choose CD in the Boot Solaris screen if you are installing from the CD-ROM set and continue with the installation.

To configure the X server

Skip configuring the KDM X server at the first two opportunities. Wait for the third opportunity — after all the software is installed and before configuring the X server.

1. When the kdmconfig - Introduction screen appears during installation, press F4 to skip configuring the X server and continue with the installation.

   After the software installation completes, the installer prompts you for the root password to configure the X Server (Windows System Configuration).

2. Enter the root password. The kdmconfig Mismatch Detected screen appears. Press F2 to configure.

3. Select the default option, Change Video Device/Monitor, and press F2 to continue.

4. Press Enter to select 16 color Standard VGA 640x480 (256K) and press F2 to continue.
5 Use the arrow keys to select Multifrequency 100KHz (up to 1600x1200 @ 80Hz). Press Enter and press F2 to continue.

6 Do not change the default screen size of 17 inches. Press F2 to continue.

7 Do not change the default option 640x480. Press F2 in the Virtual Screen Resolution Selection screen.

8 Do not change the default of No changes needed – Test/Save and Exit. Press F2 to continue.

9 Press F4 to bypass the Windows System Configuration tests.

10 Follow the prompts to complete the installation.

This completes the basic installation of the Solaris 9 guest operating system and KDM X server.

**VMware Tools**

There is no version of VMware Tools that supports Solaris 9.
Solaris 8 Operating System x86 Platform Edition

This section contains product support, installation instructions, and known issues for Solaris 8 Operating System for x86 platform Edition.

32-Bit Support

The following VMware products support 32-bit Solaris 8 Operating System for x86 Platform Edition:

- **ESX Server** – experimental support only
  - Solaris 8 x86 Platform Edition – ESX 4.0

  **Update Support**
  - Solaris 8 06/00 – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 8 10/00 – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 8 01/01 – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 8 04/01 – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 8 07/01 – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 8 10/01 – ESX 4.0
  - Solaris 8 02/02 – ESX 4.0

**Support Considerations**

- There is no version of VMware Tools that supports Solaris 8.
- Solaris 8 supports a maximum of 32GB RAM.
- Solaris 8 does not support the Bus Logic SCSI storage adapter.
- Default storage adapter for Solaris 8 is IDE, but use LSI/LSISAS instead.
- Solaris 8 supports e1000 and Pcnet network adapters.

General Installation Notes

Be sure to read “General Guidelines for All VMware Products” on page 50 as well as this guide to installing your specific guest operating system.

VMware products support only the x86 Platform Edition. You cannot install the SPARC Platform Edition in a VMware virtual machine.

The easiest method of installing the Solaris 8 x86 in a virtual machine is to use the standard Solaris 8 x86 Platform Edition Installation CD. If your VMware product supports it, you might also install from a PXE server.

Before installing the operating system, create and configure a new virtual machine.

**NOTE** If you are installing a guest operating system through VMware VirtualCenter or vCenter Server, be sure it is supported under the VMware product—ESX Server —on which you are running the virtual machine.

The Solaris 8 installation CD does not include the Solaris 8 SCSI (LSI/LSISAS) drivers. If you select LSI/LSISAS drivers when installing the guest on the virtual machine, it will not detect the SCSI hard disk unless you install the drivers during the Solaris 8 installation. As a result, you need to create an Install Time Update (ITU) driver disk.

If you plan to use a SCSI hard drive, see “Adding a SCSI Driver” on page 414.

**NOTE** If you selected an IDE controller, begin installing Solaris 8 by following the “Installation Steps” on page 414.
**Installation Steps**

In most respects, you should follow the installation steps as you would for a physical machine.

1. Insert the Solaris 8 x86 Platform Edition installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Power on the virtual machine to start installing Solaris 8.
4. In the Boot Tasks screen, use the arrow keys to select View/Edit Property Settings. Press Enter to select it, and press F2 to continue.
5. Use the arrow keys to select the property `ata–dma–enabled`. Press Enter to select it and press F3 to change the value.
6. Type 1 and press Enter to enable DMA at the Specify Value prompt.
8. Choose CD in the Boot Solaris screen if you are installing from the CD-ROM set and continue with the installation.

**To configure the X server**

Skip configuring the KDM X server at the first two opportunities. Wait for the third opportunity — after all the software is installed and before configuring the X server.

1. When the kdmconfig - Introduction screen appears during installation, press F4 to skip configuring the X server and continue with the installation.
   
   After the software installation completes, the installer prompts you for the root password to configure the X Server (Windows System Configuration).
2. Enter the root password. The kdmconfig Mismatch Detected screen appears. Press F2 to configure.
3. Select the default option, Change Video Device/Monitor, and press F2 to continue.
4. Press Enter to select 16 color Standard VGA 640x480 (256K) and press F2 to continue.
5. Use the arrow keys to select Multifrequency 100KHz (up to 1600x1200 @ 80Hz). Press Enter and press F2 to continue.
6. Do not change the default screen size of 17 inches. Press F2 to continue.
7. Do not change the default option 640x480. Press F2 in the Virtual Screen Resolution Selection screen.
8. Do not change the default of No changes needed – Test/Save and Exit. Press F2 to continue.
9. Press F4 to bypass the Windows System Configuration tests.
10. Follow the prompts to complete the installation.

This completes the basic installation of the Solaris 8 guest operating system and KDM X server.

**Adding a SCSI Driver**

To add a SCSI drive, first create a driver disk with the Solaris 8 drivers. During installation when you install the drivers, the drivers detect the SCSI hard drive.

Download SCSI drivers for Solaris 8 from the LSI Web site:

http://www.lsi.com/DistributionSystem/AssetDocument/itmpt_x86_5.07.04.zip

**Creating an ITU Driver Disk Using Solaris**

Use the existing dd image `itmpt–x86–50704–itu–s9.dd` file in the zip file to create the driver disk.

Type the following command to create the driver disk:

```
    dd if=itmpt-x86-50704-itu-s9.dd of=/vol/dev/aliases/floppy0 bs=32768
```
NOTE If you want to use Windows to create the disk, refer to the instructions in \texttt{itmpt\_x86\_5.07.04.txt} in the zip file.

**Detecting the SCSI Hard Drive**

These instructions apply to both SCSI and LSI/LSI SAS.

1. When you begin the installation, press F4 in the Solaris Device Configuration Assistant screen to add the drivers.

2. Insert the ITU disk (connect the Floppy drive to A: in the virtual machine) and press F2 to continue. The disk loads the software on the virtual machine.

3. In the Continue Supplement Driver Installation screen, first disconnect the disk and then press F4.

4. Press F2 to continue the installation in the Identified Device Drivers screen. Then follow the rest of the installation steps from Step 3 in "Installation Steps" on page 414.

**VMware Tools**

There is no version of VMware Tools that supports Solaris 8.
Index

Numerics
4-bit color, do not use in
  SUSE Linux 9.0 guest 284
  SUSE Linux 9.1 280
  SUSE Linux 9.2 276
  SUSE Linux 9.3 272
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 234
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 229
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 242
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 236
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 247
64-bit support
  Asianux 3.0 99
  CentOS 5 102
  Debian 4.0 111
  Debian 5.0 109
  FreeBSD 5.3 365
  FreeBSD 5.4 363
  FreeBSD 5.5 361
  FreeBSD 6.0 359
  FreeBSD 6.1 357
  FreeBSD 6.2 355
  FreeBSD 6.3 353
  FreeBSD 6.4 350
  FreeBSD 7.0 348
  FreeBSD 7.1 345
  Mac OS X Server 10.5 118
  Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 121
  Mandriva Corporate Server 4 124
  Mandriva Linux 2006 133
  Mandriva Linux 2007 130
  Mandriva Linux 2008 127
  Open SUSE Linux 10.2 261
  Open SUSE Linux 10.3 258
  Open SUSE Linux 11.1 255
  Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 161
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 182
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 174
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 166
  Solaris 10 405
  SUSE Linux 10 267
  SUSE Linux 10.1 264
  SUSE Linux 9.1 278
  SUSE Linux 9.2 274
  SUSE Linux 9.3 270
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 232
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 228
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 239
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 235
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 244
  Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 321
  Ubuntu 8.10 316
  Ubuntu 9.04 312
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 342
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 339
  Ubuntu Linux 6.06 336
  Ubuntu Linux 6.10 333
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 329
  Ubuntu Linux 7.10 325
  Windows 7 53
  Windows Preinstallation Environment 55
  Windows Recovery Environment 58
  Windows Server 2003 71
  Windows Server 2008 60
  Windows Vista 65
  Windows XP 77
64-bit support, guest requirements 50

A
activate product
  Windows Server 2003 74
  Windows XP 80
adding disks
  IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 guest 117
  IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 guest 115
architecture, choosing on 64-bit host for SUSE Linux
  9.3 272
arrow keys, cannot use to browse file system
  NetWare 5.1 Server guest 400
  NetWare 6.0 Server guest 394
Asianux 3.0
  64-bit support 99
  installing guest operating system 99
  screen saver, running 101
  timekeeping configurations 101
  TSC clocksource performance 101

B
black screen during installation, Turbolinux 10
  Server 299
boot failure in Windows 2000 SP3 guest 85
C

CD-ROM, cannot mount as volume for NetWare 5.1 Server guest 399

cd-writing software can crash

IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 guest 117
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 guest 115

CentOS 4

avoid migrating to different processor type 108
copied virtual machines, using the network 108
installing guest operating system 106
screen saver, running 108
timekeeping configurations 108
TSC clocksource performance 108

CentOS 5

64-bit support 102
avoid migrating to different processor type 105
copied virtual machines, using the network 104
installing guest operating system 102
screen saver, running 104
timekeeping configurations 104
TSC clocksource performance 104

checked build, running

Windows Server 2003 74
Windows XP 80

COM ports

Windows 95 guest 95
Windows 98 guest 92
copied virtual machines, using the network
CentOS 4 108
CentOS 5 104
Novell Linux Desktop 9 159
Open Enterprise Server 390, 395, 400
Open SUSE Linux 10.2 263
Open SUSE Linux 10.3 259
Open SUSE Linux 11.1 257
Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 162
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 178
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 169
SUSE Linux 10 269
SUSE Linux 10.1 266
SUSE Linux 9.1 280
SUSE Linux 9.2 276
SUSE Linux 9.3 272
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 232
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 230
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 242
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 237
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 247

CPU idle program

MS-DOS 6.22 98
NetWare 4.2 Server 403
NetWare 5.1 Server 398

NetWare 6.0 Server 393
NetWare 6.5 Server 389
create boot disks

IBM OS/2 4.0 guest 117
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 guest 115

D
data transfer failure through parallel port, Windows XP 80

Debian 4.0

64-bit support 111
avoid migrating to different processor type 113
installing guest operating system 111
root, enable to install VMware Tools 112
timekeeping configurations 112
TSC clocksource performance 112
X server fails to start with 64-bit guest 112

Debian 5.0

64-bit support 109
avoid migrating to different processor type 110
installing guest operating system 109
root, enable to install VMware Tools 110
timekeeping configurations 110
TSC clocksource performance 110
deprecated guests 41

DHCP address, getting for Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest 198

DHCP error

Mandrake Linux 10 141
Mandrake Linux 10.1 138
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 122
Mandriva Corporate Server 4 125
Mandriva Linux 2006 135
Mandriva Linux 2007 132
Mandriva Linux 2008 129

disk geometry in FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 guests 383
disk partition, size for Mac OS X Server 10.5 guest 120
disks, using multiple in Windows NT guest 87
display

settings for Windows Server 2003 74
small for Solaris 10 408
display, changing resolution

Mandrake Linux 10 guest 140
Mandrake Linux 10.1 guest 137
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guest 122
Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guest 125
Mandriva Linux 2006 guest 135
Mandriva Linux 2007 guest 131
Mandriva Linux 2008 guest 129
Sun Java Desktop System 2 guest 221

DMA

enabling in Windows 95 guest 95
enabling in Windows NT guest 86
download maintenance packs for SCO UnixWare 7 guest 226

downloading drivers for SCO OpenServer 5.0 222
driver, “tainted” message
    Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 188
    Red Hat Linux 8.0 201
    Red Hat Linux 9.0 198
drivers
    NetWare 5.1 Server, use LSI Logic SCSI 398
    Solaris 10, supported network adapter 408
    Windows XP, SCSI support 78

drives sizes for SCO OpenServer 5.0 222

E
enhanced vmxnet adapter, enabling for Windows Server 2003 73
error message, installing from DVD
    SUSE Linux 8.2 287
    SUSE Linux 9.0 284
    SUSE Linux 9.1 280
errors
    INIT on Red Hat Linux 9.0 197
    installation, NetWare 6.0 Server 394
    Pentium 4 host page fault on NetWare 5.1 Server 399

F
floppy disk installation for Windows 98 91
format virtual disk 50
FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3
    avoid migrating to different processor type 385
    installing guest operating system 382
    screen saver, running 385
    sound not tested 384
FreeBSD 4.0.4, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3
    locations file grows with each reboot 383
FreeBSD 4.10
    installing guest operating system 375
    locations file grows with each reboot 375
    screen saver, running 376
    sound not tested 376
FreeBSD 4.11
    installing guest operating system 373
    locations file grows with each reboot 373
    screen saver, running 374
    sound not tested 374
FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8
    avoid migrating to different processor type 380
    installing guest operating system 379
    locations file grows with each reboot 380
    screen saver, running 380
    sound not tested 380
FreeBSD 4.9
    installing guest operating system 377
    locations file grows with each reboot 377
    screen saver, running 378
    sound not tested 378
FreeBSD 5.0
    installing guest operating system 371
    locations file grows with each reboot 362, 372
    screen saver, running 372
    sound not tested 372
FreeBSD 5.1
    installing guest operating system 369
    locations file grows with each reboot 370
    screen saver, running 370
    sound not tested 370
FreeBSD 5.2
    installing guest operating system 367
    locations file grows with each reboot 368
    screen saver, running 368
    sound not tested 368
FreeBSD 5.3
    64-bit support 365
    installing guest operating system 365
    locations file grows with each reboot 366
    screen saver, running 366
    sound not tested 366
FreeBSD 5.4
    64-bit support 363
    installing guest operating system 363
    locations file grows with each reboot 364
    screen saver, running 364
    sound not tested 364
FreeBSD 5.5
    64-bit support 361
    installing guest operating system 361
    screen saver, running 362
    sound not tested 362
FreeBSD 6.0
    64-bit support 359
    installing guest operating system 359
    locations file grows with each reboot 360
    screen saver, running 360
    sound not tested 360
FreeBSD 6.1
    64-bit support 357
    installing guest operating system 357
    locations file grows with each reboot 358
    screen saver, running 358
    sound not tested 358
FreeBSD 6.2
    64-bit support 355
    installing guest operating system 355
    locations file grows with each reboot 356
screen saver, running 348, 355, 356
sound not tested 347, 356
FreBSD 6.3
64-bit support 353
installing guest operating system 353
ISO images 353
locations file grows with each reboot 354
scroll up mouse operation does not work 354
sound not tested 354
suspend power event script does not work 354
FreBSD 6.4
64-bit support 350
installing guest operating system 350
locations file grows with each reboot 351
scroll up mouse operation does not work 351
sound not tested 352
suspend power event script does not work 351
FreBSD 7.0
64-bit support 348
installing guest operating system 348
locations file grows with each reboot 349
screen saver, running 349
sound not tested 349
FreBSD 7.1
64-bit support 345
can stall with large amounts of memory 346
cannot change screen resolution without VMware Tools installed 346
fails with odd number of virtual CPUs 346
install and reboot takes long time with 4 virtual CPUs 346
installing guest operating system 345
locations file grows with each reboot 347
scroll up mouse operation does not work 347
suspend power event script does not work 346
G
graphics settings for Windows Server 2003 74
GSX Server sound adapter 52
guest operating systems licenses 51
guests, deprecated 41
H
hangs
NetWare 6.5 Server with SP3 and SP5 389
Solaris 10 with Virtual SMP 409
hibernation
Windows Server 2003 guest 74
Windows XP guest 80
Hot Add support
CPU, memory, plug devices 44
http 135
hyperthreading performance on ESX Server 3, Solaris 10 Update 1 409
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0
adding disks 117
cd-writing software can crash system 117
create boot disks 117
installing guest operating system 116
scroll up mouse operation does not work with VI client 117
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2
adding disks 115
cd-writing software can crash system 115
create boot disks 115
installing guest operating system 114
scroll up mouse operation does not work with VI client 115
INIT errors, slow performance on Red Hat Linux 9.0 197
installation hangs
Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 156
Red Hat Linux 7.1 213
Red Hat Linux 7.2 209
Sun Java Desktop System 2 221
SUSE Linux 8.1 291
SUSE Linux 8.2 287
SUSE Linux 9.0 283
SUSE Linux 9.1 280
installing guest operating system
Asianux 3.0 guest 99
CentOS 4 guest 106
CentOS 5 guest 102
Debian 4.0 guest 111
Debian 5.0 109
FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 guest 382
FreeBSD 4.10 guest 375
FreeBSD 4.11 guest 373
FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 guest 379
FreeBSD 4.9 guest 377
FreeBSD 5.0 guest 371
FreeBSD 5.1 guest 369
FreeBSD 5.2 guest 367
FreeBSD 5.3 guest 365
FreeBSD 5.4 guest 363
FreeBSD 5.5 guest 361
FreeBSD 6.0 guest 359
FreeBSD 6.1 guest 357
FreeBSD 6.2 guest 355
FreeBSD 6.3 guest 353
FreeBSD 6.4 guest 350
FreeBSD 7.0 guest 348
FreeBSD 7.1 guest 345
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 guest 116
installing guest operating system, using ISO image 51
installing VMware Tools on Linux guests 42
Intel EM64T hardware, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9
guest spontaneously resets 247
Intel Woodcrest host might crash with 64-bit Windows
Server 2003 R2 guest 75
IP address for Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest 198
IPv6, disabling for VMware Tools
Asianux 3.0 guests 100
CentOS 4 guests 107
CentOS 5 guests 104
FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 guests 383
FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 guests 380
Mandrake Linux 10 guests 140
Mandrake Linux 10.1 guests 137
Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 guests 156
Mandrake Linux 8.2 guests 153
Mandrake Linux 9.0 guests 150
Mandrake Linux 9.1 guests 147
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating System</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mandrake Linux 9.2 guests</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guests</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guests</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandriva Linux 2006 guests</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandriva Linux 2007 guests</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandriva Linux 2008 guests</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Novell Linux Desktop 9 guests</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open SUSE Linux 10.2 guests</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open SUSE Linux 10.3 guests</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open SUSE Linux 11.1 guests</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 guests</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 guests</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 guests</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 guests</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 guests</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Linux 6.2 guests</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Linux 7 guests</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Linux 7.1 guests</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Linux 7.2 guests</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Linux 7.3 guests</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Linux 8.0 guests</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Linux 9.0 guests</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 10 guests</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 10.1 guests</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 7.3 guests</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 8.0 guests</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 8.1 guests</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 8.2 guests</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 9.0 guests</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 9.1 guests</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux 9.3 guests</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 guests</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 guests</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 guests</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 guests</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 guests</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 guests</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 guests</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbolinux 10 Desktop guests</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbolinux 7.0 guests</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 guests</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbolinux Workstation 8 guests</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 5.04 guests</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 5.10 guests</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.06 guests</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 6.10 guests</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.04 guests</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 7.10 guests</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.04 LTS guests</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 8.10 guests</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubuntu 9.04 guests</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ISO image**
- cannot eject for Solaris 10 409
- create for Windows PE 2.1 56
- FreeBSD 6.3 353
- installing guest operating system 51

**K**
- kernel modules, support for prebuilt
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 228
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 228, 235
  - Ubuntu 8.04.2 LTS 320, 321
- kernel panics on SCO UnixWare 7.1.1 when configuring network 227
- kernel, avoid installing inappropriate type, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 191
- keyboard and mouse, regaining control after rebooting NetWare 6.5 Server guest 389

**L**
- licenses for guest operating systems 51
- locations file grows with each reboot
  - FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 guest 383
  - FreeBSD 4.10 guest 375
  - FreeBSD 4.11 guest 373
  - FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 guest 380
  - FreeBSD 4.9 guest 377
  - FreeBSD 5.0 guest 362, 372
  - FreeBSD 5.1 guest 370
  - FreeBSD 5.2 guest 368
  - FreeBSD 5.3 guest 366
  - FreeBSD 5.4 guest 364
  - FreeBSD 6.0 guest 360
  - FreeBSD 6.1 guest 358
  - FreeBSD 6.2 guest 356
  - FreeBSD 6.3 guest 354
  - FreeBSD 6.4 guest 351
  - FreeBSD 7.0 guest 349
  - FreeBSD 7.1 guest 347
- LSI Logic SCSI adapter, Solaris 9 411
- LUN, problems when shared with Windows NT RDM installation
  - NetWare 4.2 Server 403
  - NetWare 5.1 Server 400
  - NetWare 6.0 Server 394

**M**
- Mac OS X Server 10.5
  - 64-bit support 118
  - disk partition, increase size 120
  - installing guest operating system 118
- maintenance packs, install for SCO UnixWare 7 guest 226
- Mandrake Linux 10
  - avoid migrating to different processor type 141
changing display resolution 140
DHCP error 141
installing guest operating system 139
installing X server 139
screen saver, running 141
timekeeping configurations 141
Mandrake Linux 10.1
avoid migrating to different processor type 138
changing display resolution 137
DHCP error 138
installing guest operating system 136
installing X server 136
screen saver, running 138
timekeeping configurations 138
Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1
avoid migrating to different processor type 157
screen saver, running 157
timekeeping configurations 157
Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1
installation hangs 156
installing guest operating system 155
shutting down 157
Mandrake Linux 8.2
avoid migrating to different processor type 154
installing guest operating system 152
installing X server 152
screen saver, running 154
timekeeping configurations 154
Mandrake Linux 9.0
avoid migrating to different processor type 151
installing guest operating system 149
installing X server 149
screen saver, running 151
timekeeping configurations 151
Mandrake Linux 9.1
avoid migrating to different processor type 148
installing guest operating system 146
installing X server 146
screen saver, running 148
timekeeping configurations 148
Mandrake Linux 9.2
avoid migrating to different processor type 144
installing guest operating system 142
screen saver, running 144
timekeeping configurations 144
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4
64-bit support 121
avoid migrating to different processor type 123
changing display resolution 122
installing guest operating system 121
installing X server 121
screen saver, running 123
timekeeping configurations 123
Mandriva Corporate Server 4
64-bit support 124
avoid migrating to different processor type 126
changing display resolution 125
DHCP error 125
installing guest operating system 124
installing X server 124
screen saver, running 126
timekeeping configurations 126
Mandriva Linux 2006
64-bit support 133
avoid migrating to different processor type 135
changing display resolution 135
DHCP error 135
installing guest operating system 133, 134
installing X server 134
screen saver, running 135
timekeeping configurations 135
Mandriva Linux 2007
64-bit support 130
avoid migrating to different processor type 132
changing display resolution 131
installing guest operating system 130
installing X server 130
screen saver, running 132
timekeeping configurations 132
Mandriva Linux 2008
64-bit support 127
avoid migrating to different processor type 129
changing display resolution 129
DHCP error 129
installing guest operating system 127
installing X server 128
screen saver, running 129
timekeeping configurations 129
TSC clocksource performance 129
manually starting vmware-user process for VMware Tools 43
memory
FreeBSD 7.1 can stall with large amounts 346
limits during Windows NT installation 88
requirements for Solaris 10 407
Windows 2003 product activation 74
Windows XP product activation 80
Microsoft Windows Clustering Service and ESX Server 74
Microsoft Windows OEM discs, installing guest operating system 51
monitor panic in SMP mode on host with AMD Opteron processor, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 248
mouse does not function properly, Red Hat Enterprise Linux WS 2.1 UP6 193
mouse pointer, grabbing
  NetWare 5.1 Server guest 399
  NetWare 6.0 Server guest 394
mouse scroll up operation does not work
  FreeBSD 6.3 guest 354
  FreeBSD 6.4 guest 351
  FreeBSD 7.1 guest 347
mouse stops working on SCO OpenServer 5.0 guest 224
mouse, resolving problems in Windows 3.1x guest 98
MSCS
  See Microsoft Windows Clustering Service
MS-DOS 6.22
  CPU idle program recommended 98
  installing guest operating system 97
  VMware Tools not available 98
MS-DOS prompt during Windows 95 installation 94
msgina.dll and boot failure in Windows 2000 SP3 guest 85

NetWare 4.2 Server
  CPU idle program recommended 403
  installing as RDM with shared LUN 403
  installing guest operating system 401
NetWare 5.1 Server
  arrow keys, cannot use to browse file system 400
  CD-ROM, cannot mount as volume 399
  CPU idle program recommended 398
  disconnecting VMware Tools ISO file 399
  installing as RDM with shared LUN 400
  installing guest operating system 396
  LSI Logic SCSI driver 398
  mouse pointer, grabbing 399
  multiple network adapters on same network 399
  Pentium 4 host page fault error 399
NetWare 6.0 Server
  arrow keys cannot use to browse file system 394
  CPU idle program recommended 393
  crashes when stack dump exceeds memory limit 394
  disconnecting VMware Tools ISO file 394
  installation error on first attempt 394
  installing as RDM with shared LUN 394
  installing guest operating system 391
  mouse pointer, grabbing 394
NetWare 6.5 Server
  CPU idle program recommended 389
  hangs with SP3 and SP5 389
  installing guest operating system 386
  navigating in text mode 389
  RDM virtual machine 390
  regaining keyboard and mouse control after reboot 389
networking
  adapter for Windows 3.1x 98
  installing driver in Windows 95 guest 94
  Windows 95 guest, enabling 95
  Windows 95 guest, might not work 95
  Windows 98 guest, enabling 92
  Windows NT guest 87
networking in copied virtual machines
  390, 395, 400
        CentOS 4 108
        CentOS 5 104
        Novell Linux Desktop 9 159
        Open SUSE Linux 10.2 263
        Open SUSE Linux 10.3 259
        Open SUSE Linux 11.1 257
        Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 162
        Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 178
        Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 169
        SUSE Linux 10 269
        SUSE Linux 10.1 266
        SUSE Linux 9.1 280
        SUSE Linux 9.2 276
        SUSE Linux 9.3 272
        SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 234
        SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 230
        SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 242
        SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 237
        SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 247
Novell Linux Desktop 9
  avoid migrating to different processor type 160
  installing guest operating system 158
  networking in copied virtual machines 159
  timekeeping configurations 159

O
OEM discs, Microsoft Windows 51
Open Enterprise Server
  networking in copied virtual machines 390, 395, 400
Open SUSE Linux 10.1
  TSC clocksource performance 264
Open SUSE Linux 10.2
  64-bit support 261
  avoid migrating to different processor type 263
  networking in copied virtual machines 263
Index

timekeeping configurations 263
Open SUSE Linux 10.3
  64-bit support 258
  avoid migrating to different processor type 260
  installing guest operating system 258
  networking in copied virtual machines 259
timekeeping configurations 260
TSC clocksource performance 260
Open SUSE Linux 11.1
  64-bit support 255
  avoid migrating to different processor type 257
  installing guest operating system 255
  networking in copied virtual machines 257
Open SUSE Linux10.2
  TSC clocksource performance 263
Operating System Specific Packages, VMware Tools 42
Oracle Enterprise Linux 5
  64-bit support 161
  avoid migrating to different processor type 163
  installing guest operating system 161
  networking in copied virtual machines 162
timekeeping configurations 163
OSMP, install and configure for SCO UnixWare 7
guest 226
OSP
  See Operating System Specific Packages
P
PAE message displayed during installation
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 186
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 177
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 169
  Solaris 10 408
  Windows XP 80
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 193
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 187
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 178
  Red Hat Linux 7.2 210
  Red Hat Linux 7.3 206
  Red Hat Linux 8.0 202
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 198
  SUSE Linux 8.2 287
  SUSE Linux 9.0 284
  SUSE Linux 9.1 281
  SUSE Linux 9.2 276
  SUSE Linux 9.3 273
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 251
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 248
  Windows 2000 85
  Windows NT 88
  Windows Server 2003 75
  Windows XP 81
partition virtual disk 50
Pentium 4 host page fault error, NetWare 5.1 Server 399
phantom COM ports
  Windows 95 95
  Windows 98 92
processor type, avoid changing
  CentOS 4 108
  CentOS 5 105
  Debian 4.0 113
  Debian 5.0 110
  FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 385
  FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 380
  Mandrake Linux 10 141
  Mandrake Linux 10.1 138
  Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1 157
  Mandrake Linux 8.2 154
  Mandrake Linux 9.0 151
  Mandrake Linux 9.1 148
  Mandrake Linux 9.2 144
  Mandriva Corporate Desktop 123
  Mandriva Corporate Server 4 126
  Mandriva Linux 2006 135
  Mandriva Linux 2007 132
  Mandriva Linux 2008 129
  Novell Linux Desktop 9 160
  Open SUSE Linux 10.2 263
  Open SUSE Linux 10.3 260
  Open SUSE Linux 11.1 257
  Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 163
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 193
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 187
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 178
  Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 169
  Red Hat Linux 6.2 219
  Red Hat Linux 7.0 216
  Red Hat Linux 7.1 213
  Red Hat Linux 7.2 209
  Red Hat Linux 7.3 205
  Red Hat Linux 8.0 201
  Red Hat Linux 9.0 197
  SUSE Linux 10 269
  SUSE Linux 10.1 266
  SUSE Linux 7.3 296
  SUSE Linux 8.0 294
  SUSE Linux 8.1 291
  SUSE Linux 8.2 287
  SUSE Linux 9.0 284
  SUSE Linux 9.1 281
  SUSE Linux 9.2 276
  SUSE Linux 9.3 273
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 234
  SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 230

VMware, Inc.
425
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 242
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 237
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 253
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 251
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 248
Turbolinux 10 Desktop 302
Turbolinux 10 Server 299
Turbolinux 7.0 311
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 305
Turbolinux Workstation 8 307
Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 324
Ubuntu 8.10 318
Ubuntu 9.04 314
Ubuntu Linux 5.04 344
Ubuntu Linux 5.10 341
Ubuntu Linux 6.06 338
Ubuntu Linux 6.10 335
Ubuntu Linux 7.04 332
Ubuntu Linux 7.10 327

product activation
Windows Server 2003 74
Windows XP 80

R
RDM virtual machine for NetWare 6.5 Server 390
read-only filesystem occurs in specific instance when VMware Tools is uninstalled on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 169

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1
avoid installing inappropriate kernel 191
avoid migrating to different processor type 193
installing guest operating system 189
installing X server 190
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 193
reading second installation CD 192
screen saver, running 193
timekeeping configurations 193
WS UP6, mouse does not function properly 193

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3
64-bit support 182
avoid migrating to different processor type 187
installation on uniprocessor with more than 4GB of memory 187
installing guest operating system 180
message about “tainted” driver 188
PAE message displayed during installation 186
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 187
reading second installation CD 186
screen saver, running 187
timekeeping configurations 187
virtual machine fails when disk removed 188
X windows fails to start 188

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4
64-bit support 174
avoid migrating to different processor type 178
guests displayed with incorrect operating system type 179
installing guest operating system 171
networking in copied virtual machines 178
PAE message displayed during installation 177
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 178
screen saver, running 178
timekeeping configurations 178

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5
64-bit support 166
avoid migrating to different processor type 169
installing guest operating system 164
networking in copied virtual machines 169
PAE message displayed during installation 169
read-only file system occurs in specific instance when VMware Tools is uninstalled 169
timekeeping configurations 169
TSC clocksource performance 169

Red Hat Linux 6.2
avoid migrating to different processor type 219
installing guest operating system 217
screen saver, running 219
timekeeping configurations 219

Red Hat Linux 7.0
avoid migrating to different processor type 216
installing guest operating system 214
installing X server 214
screen saver, running 216
timekeeping configurations 216

Red Hat Linux 7.1
avoid migrating to different processor type 213
installing guest operating system 211
installing X server 211
resolving installation hang 213
screen saver, running 213
timekeeping configurations 213

Red Hat Linux 7.2
avoid migrating to different processor type 209
installing guest operating system 207
installing X server 207
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 210
resolving installation hang 209
screen saver, running 209
timekeeping configurations 209

Red Hat Linux 7.3
avoid migrating to different processor type 205
installing guest operating system 203
installing X server 203
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 206
screen saver, running 205
timekeeping configurations 205
Red Hat Linux 8.0
  avoid migrating to different processor type 201
  installing guest operating system 199
  installing X server 199
  message about “tainted” driver 201
  PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 202
  screen saver, running 201
  timekeeping configurations 201

Red Hat Linux 9.0
  avoid migrating to different processor type 197
  getting IP address from DHCP 198
  INIT errors, slow performance 197
  installing guest operating system 194
  installing X server 194
  message about “tainted” driver 198
  PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 198
  reading second installation CD 196
  screen saver, running 196
  timekeeping configurations 196

resolution, changing
  Mandrake Linux 10 guest 140
  Mandrake Linux 10.1 guest 137
  Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guest 122
  Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guest 125
  Mandriva Linux 2006 guest 135
  Mandriva Linux 2007 guest 131
  Mandriva Linux 2008 guest 129
  Sun Java Desktop System 2 guest 221

root, enable to install VMware Tools on
  Debian 4.0 112
  Debian 5.0 110
  Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 323
  Ubuntu 8.10 317
  Ubuntu 9.04 313
  Ubuntu Linux 5.04 343
  Ubuntu Linux 5.10 340
  Ubuntu Linux 6.06 337
  Ubuntu Linux 6.10 334
  Ubuntu Linux 7.04 331
  Ubuntu Linux 7.10 326

S

SCO OpenServer 5.0
  configuring network adapter protocol 224
  downloading drivers 222
  drive sizes 222
  installing guest operating system 222
  mouse stops working 224
  supported SCSI virtual disks 222
  virtual disk recommendations 222
  X window system stops working 224

SCO UnixWare 7
  7.1.1 kernel panics when configuring network 227
  download maintenance packs 226
  install and configure OSMP 226
  install maintenance packs 226
  installing guest operating system 226
  screen resolution, can not change for FreeBSD 7.1 guest
  without VMware Tools installed 346
  screen saver, disable on host 51
  screen saver, running in
    Asianux 3.0 guest 101
    CentOS 4 guest 108
    CentOS 5 guest 104
    FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 guest 385
    FreeBSD 4.10 guest 376
    FreeBSD 4.11 guest 374
    FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 guest 380
    FreeBSD 4.9 guest 378
    FreeBSD 5.0 guest 372
    FreeBSD 5.1 guest 370
    FreeBSD 5.2 guest 368
    FreeBSD 5.3 guest 366
    FreeBSD 5.4 guest 364
    FreeBSD 5.5 guest 362
    FreeBSD 6.0 guest 360
    FreeBSD 6.1 guest 358
    FreeBSD 6.2 guest 348, 355, 356
    FreeBSD 7.0 guest 349
    Mandrake Linux 10 guest 141
    Mandrake Linux 10.1 guest 138
    Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1 guest 157
    Mandrake Linux 8.2 guest 154
    Mandrake Linux 9.0 guest 151
    Mandrake Linux 9.1 guest 148
    Mandrake Linux 9.2 guest 144
    Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guest 123
    Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guest 126
    Mandriva Linux 2006 guest 135
    Mandriva Linux 2007 guest 132
    Mandriva Linux 2008 guest 129
    Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 guest 193
    Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 guest 187
    Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 guest 178
    Red Hat Linux 6.2 guest 219
    Red Hat Linux 7.0 guest 216
    Red Hat Linux 7.1 guest 213
    Red Hat Linux 7.2 guest 209
    Red Hat Linux 7.3 guest 205
    Red Hat Linux 8.0 guest 201
    Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest 196
    Sun Java Desktop System 2 guest 221
    SUSE Linux 7.3 guest 296
    SUSE Linux 8.0 guest 294
    SUSE Linux 8.1 guest 291
    SUSE Linux 8.2 guest 287
SUSE Linux 9.0 284
SUSE Linux 9.1 281
SUSE Linux 9.2 guest 276
SUSE Linux 9.3 guest 273
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 guest 253
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 guest 251
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 guest 247
Turbolinux 10 Desktop guest 302
Turbolinux 10 Server guest 299
Turbolinux 7.0 guest 310
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 guest 305
Turbolinux Workstation 8 guest 307
screen turns black during installation, Turbolinux 10 Server 299
scroll up mouse operation does not work
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 guest with VI client 117
IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 guest with VI client 115
SCSI driver support, Windows XP guest 78
SCSI hard drive, detecting for Solaris 8 415
SCSI support for Solaris 9 411
SCSI virtual disk in FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 guests 383
SCSI virtual disks, supported on SCO OpenServer 5.0 guest 222
serial ports
Windows 95 guest 95
Windows 98 guest 92
Server Core, 64-bit Windows 2008 Server 60, 61
shutting down, Mandrake Linux 8.0 157
SMP support on virtual hardware 43
Solaris 10
32-bit mode on a 64-bit host 408
64-bit support 405
cannot eject CD-Rom ISO image 409
ESX Server 3.x network adapter driver support 408
hyperthreading performance on ESX Server 3 409
installing guest operating system 404
memory requirements 407
PAE message displayed during installation 408
small display 408
supported network adapter driver 408
Update 1 guests unresponsive when halted 409
Updates 1 and 2 fail on Pentium M-based systems 409
Virtual SMP may hang when powering on 409
Solaris 8
detecting the SCSI hard drive 415
installing guest operating system 413
Solaris 9
installing guest operating system 410
SCSI hard disk, use LSI Logic adapter 411
sound adapters on GSX and VMware Servers 52
sound not tested
FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 384
FreeBSD 4.10 376
FreeBSD 4.11 374
FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, 4.8 380
FreeBSD 4.9 378
FreeBSD 5.0 372
FreeBSD 5.1 370
FreeBSD 5.2 368
FreeBSD 5.3 366
FreeBSD 5.4 364
FreeBSD 5.5 362
FreeBSD 6.0 360
FreeBSD 6.1 358
FreeBSD 6.2 347, 356
FreeBSD 6.3 354
FreeBSD 6.4 352
FreeBSD 7.0 349
spontaneously resets on Intel EM64T hardware 247
stack dump memory limit on NetWare 6.0 Server guest 394
Sun Java Desktop System 2
changing display resolution 221
installation hangs 221
installing guest operating system 220
screen saver, running 221
SUSE Linux 10
64-bit support 267
avoid migrating to different processor type 269
installing guest operating system 267
networking in copied virtual machines 269
timekeeping configurations 269
SUSE Linux 10.1
64-bit support 264
avoid migrating to different processor type 266
installing guest operating system 264
networking in copied virtual machines 266
timekeeping configurations 266
SUSE Linux 7.3
avoid migrating to different processor type 296
installing guest operating system 295
installing X server 295
screen saver, running 296
timekeeping configurations 296
SUSE Linux 8.0
avoid migrating to different processor type 294
installing guest operating system 292
installing X server 292
screen saver, running 294
timekeeping configurations 294
SUSE Linux 8.1
avoid migrating to different processor type 291
installation hangs 291
installing guest operating system 289
installing X server 289
screen saver, running 291
timekeeping configurations 291

SUSE Linux 8.2
avoid migrating to different processor type 287
DVD installation might stop with error message 287
installation hangs 287
installing guest operating system 285
installing X server 285
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 287
screen saver, running 287
timekeeping configurations 287

SUSE Linux 9.0
4-bit color, do not use 284
avoid migrating to different processor type 284
DVD installation might stop with error message 284
installation hangs 283
installing guest operating system 282
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 284
screen saver, running 284
timekeeping configurations 284

SUSE Linux 9.1
4-bit color, do not use 280
64-bit support 278
avoid migrating to different processor type 281
installation from DVD might stop with error message 280
installation hangs 280
installing guest operating system 278
networking in copied virtual machines 280
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 281
screen saver, running 281
timekeeping configurations 281

SUSE Linux 9.2
4-bit color, do not use 276
64-bit support 274
avoid migrating to different processor type 276
installing guest operating system 274
networking in copied virtual machines 276
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 276
screen saver, running 276
timekeeping configurations 276

SUSE Linux 9.3
4-bit color, do not use 272
64-bit support 270
avoid migrating to different processor type 273
choosing architecture on 64-bit host 272
installing guest operating system 270
networking in copied virtual machines 272
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 273
screen saver, running 273
timekeeping configurations 273

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10
4-bit color, do not use 234
64-bit support 232
avoid migrating to different processor type 234
installing guest operating system 231
networking in copied virtual machines 234
timekeeping configurations 234

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11
4-bit color, do not use 229
64-bit support 228
avoid migrating to different processor type 230
installing guest operating system 222
kernel module, support for prebuilt 228
networking in copied virtual machines 230
timekeeping configurations 230

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10
4-bit color, do not use 242
64-bit support 239
avoid migrating to different processor type 242
installing guest operating system 238
networking in copied virtual machines 242
timekeeping configurations 242

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11
4-bit color, do not use 236
64-bit support 235
avoid migrating to different processor type 237
installing guest operating system 235
kernel module, support for prebuilt 228, 235
networking in copied virtual machines 237
timekeeping configurations 237

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7
avoid migrating to different processor type 253
installing guest operating system 252
screen saver, running 253
timekeeping configurations 253

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8
avoid migrating to different processor type 251
installing guest operating system 249
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 251
screen saver, running 251
timekeeping configurations 251

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 247
4-bit color, do not use 247
64-bit support 244
avoid migrating to different processor type 248
monitor panic in SMP mode on host with AMD Opteron processor 248
networking in copied virtual machines 247
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 248
screen saver, running 248
timekeeping configurations 247
suspend power evert script does not work
   FreeBSD 6.3 guest 354
   FreeBSD 6.4 guest 351
   FreeBSD 7.1 guest 346
switching workspaces in Linux guests 43

T

  tainted driver message
     Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 188
     Red Hat Linux 8.0 201
     Red Hat Linux 9.0 198

text mode, navigating for NetWare 6.5 Server 389
timekeeping configurations
     Asianux 3.0 101
     CentOS 4 108
     CentOS 5 104
     Debian 4.0 112
     Debian 5.0 110
     Mandrake Linux 10 141
     Mandrake Linux 10.1 138
     Mandrake Linux 8.0 and 8.1 157
     Mandrake Linux 8.2 154
     Mandrake Linux 9.0 151
     Mandrake Linux 9.1 148
     Mandrake Linux 9.2 144
     Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 123
     Mandriva Corporate Server 4 126
     Mandriva Linux 2006 135
     Mandriva Linux 2007 132
     Mandriva Linux 2008 129
     Novell Linux Desktop 9 159
     Open SUSE Linux 10.2 263
     Open SUSE Linux 10.3 260
     Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 163
     Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 193
     Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 187
     Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 178
     Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 169
     Red Hat Linux 6.2 219
     Red Hat Linux 7.0 216
     Red Hat Linux 7.1 213
     Red Hat Linux 7.2 209
     Red Hat Linux 7.3 205
     Red Hat Linux 8.0 201
     Red Hat Linux 9.0 196
     SUSE Linux 10 269
     SUSE Linux 10.1 266
     SUSE Linux 7.3 296
     SUSE Linux 8.0 294
     SUSE Linux 8.1 291
     SUSE Linux 8.2 287
     SUSE Linux 9.0 284
     SUSE Linux 9.1 281
     SUSE Linux 9.2 276
     SUSE Linux 9.3 273
     SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 234
     SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 230
     SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 242
     SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 237
     SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 253
     SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 251
     SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 247
     Turbolinux 10 Desktop 302
     Turbolinux 10 Server 299
     Turbolinux 7.0 310
     Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 304
     Turbolinux Workstation 8 307
     Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 323
     Ubuntu 8.10 318
     Ubuntu 9.04 314
     Ubuntu Linux 5.04 344
     Ubuntu Linux 5.10 341
     Ubuntu Linux 6.06 338
     Ubuntu Linux 6.10 335
     Ubuntu Linux 7.04 332
     Ubuntu Linux 7.10 327

troubleshooting
     Asianux 3.0 101
     CentOS 4 108
     CentOS 5 104
     Debian 4.0 112
     Debian 5.0 110
     FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 383
     FreeBSD 4.10 375
     FreeBSD 4.11 373
     FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 380
     FreeBSD 4.9 377
     FreeBSD 5.0 372
     FreeBSD 5.2 368
     FreeBSD 5.3 366
     FreeBSD 5.4 364
     FreeBSD 5.5 362
     FreeBSD 6.0 360
     FreeBSD 6.1 358
     FreeBSD 6.2 356
     FreeBSD 6.3 354
     FreeBSD 6.4 351
     FreeBSD 7.0 349
     FreeBSD 7.1 346
     IBM OS/2 Warp 4.0 117
     IBM OS/2 Warp 4.5.2 115
     Mandrake Linux 10 140
     Mandrake Linux 10.1 137
     Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 156
Index

Mandrake Linux 8.2 154
Mandrake Linux 9.0 151
Mandrake Linux 9.1 148
Mandrake Linux 9.2 144
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 122
Mandriva Corporate Server 4 125
Mandriva Linux 2006 135
Mandriva Linux 2007 131
Mandriva Linux 2008 129
MS-DOS 6.22 98
NetWare 5.1 Server 398
NetWare 6.0 Server 394
NetWare 6.5 Server 389
Novell Linux Desktop 9 159
Open SUSE Linux 10.2 263
Open SUSE Linux 10.3 259
Open SUSE Linux 11.1 257
Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 162
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 186
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 177
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 169
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Workstation 2.1 192
Red Hat Linux 6.2 219
Red Hat Linux 7.0 216
Red Hat Linux 7.1 213
Red Hat Linux 7.2 209
Red Hat Linux 7.3 205
Red Hat Linux 8.0 201
Red Hat Linux 9.0 196
SCO OpenServer 5.0 224
SCO OpenServer 7 227
Solaris 10 408
Sun Java Desktop System 2 221
SUSE Linux 10 269
SUSE Linux 10.1 266
SUSE Linux 7.3 296
SUSE Linux 8.0 294
SUSE Linux 8.1 291
SUSE Linux 8.2 287
SUSE Linux 9.0 283
SUSE Linux 9.1 280
SUSE Linux 9.2 276
SUSE Linux 9.3 272
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 234
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 229
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 242
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 236
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 253
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 251
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 247
Turbolinux 10 Desktop 302
Turbolinux 10 Server 299
Turbolinux 7.0 310
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 304
Turbolinux Workstation 8 307
Ubuntu 5.04 344
Ubuntu 5.10 341
Ubuntu 6.06 338
Ubuntu 6.10 335
Ubuntu 7.04 332
Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 323
Ubuntu 8.10 318
Ubuntu 9.04 314
Windows 2000 85
Windows 3.1x 98
Windows 95 95
Windows 98 92
Windows Me 90
Windows NT 88
Windows PE 56
Windows Server 2003 73
Windows Server 2008 62
Windows Vista 67
Windows XP 79
TSC clocksource performance
Asianux 3.0 101
CentOS 4 108
CentOS 5 104
Debian 4.0 112
Debian 5.0 110
Mandriva Linux 2008 129
Open SUSE Linux 10.2 263, 264
Open SUSE Linux 10.3 260
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 169
Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 323
Ubuntu 8.10 318
Ubuntu 9.04 314
Ubuntu Linux 7.10 327
Turbolinux 10 Desktop
  avoid migrating to different processor type 302
  installing guest operating system 301
  screen saver, running 302
  timekeeping configurations 302
Turbolinux 10 Server 299
  avoid migrating to different processor type 299
  installing guest operating system 298
  screen saver, running 299
  screen turns black 299
  timekeeping configurations 299
Turbolinux 7.0
  avoid migrating to different processor type 311
  installing guest operating system 309
  installing X server 309
  screen saver, running 310
timekeeping configurations 310
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8
avoid migrating to different processor type 305
installing guest operating system 303
screen saver, running 305
timekeeping configurations 304
Turbolinux Workstation 8
avoid migrating to different processor type 307
installing guest operating system 306
screen saver, running 307
timekeeping configurations 307
Ubuntu 7.10
network adapter error message 314
Ubuntu 8.04 LTS
64-bit support 321
avoid migrating to different processor type 324
installing guest operating system 320
kernel module, support for prebuilt 320, 321
root, enable to install VMware Tools 323
timekeeping configurations 323
TSC clocksource performance 323
Ubuntu 8.10
64-bit support 316
avoid migrating to different processor type 318
installing guest operating system 316
root, enable to install VMware Tools 317
timekeeping configurations 318
TSC clocksource performance 318
Ubuntu 9.04
64-bit support 312
avoid migrating to different processor type 314
installing guest operating system 312
root, enable to install VMware Tools 313
timekeeping configurations 314
TSC clocksource performance 314
Ubuntu Linux 5.04
64-bit support 342
avoid migrating to different processor type 344
installing guest operating system 342
root, enable to install VMware Tools 343
timekeeping configurations 344
Ubuntu Linux 5.10
64-bit support 339
avoid migrating to different processor type 341
installing guest operating system 339
root, enable to install VMware Tools 340
timekeeping configurations 341
Ubuntu Linux 6.06
64-bit support 336
avoid migrating to different processor type 338
installing guest operating system 336
root, enable to install VMware Tools 337
timekeeping configurations 338
Ubuntu Linux 6.10
64-bit support 333
avoid migrating to different processor type 335
installing guest operating system 333
root, enable to install VMware Tools 334
timekeeping configurations 335
Ubuntu Linux 7.04
64-bit support 329
avoid migrating to different processor type 332
installing guest operating system 329
root, enable to install VMware Tools 331
timekeeping configurations 332
Ubuntu Linux 7.10
64-bit support 325
avoid migrating to different processor type 327
installing guest operating system 325
root, enable to install VMware Tools 326
timekeeping configurations 327
TSC clocksource performance 327
uniprocessor with more than 4GB of memory, installing
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 187
USB 2.0 drivers not supported on
Windows 95 guest 95
Windows 98 guest 92
Windows Me guest 90
V
guest disk
FreeBSD 7.1 fails with odd number 346
FreeBSD 7.1 takes long time to install and reboot
with 4 VCPUs 346
guest disk
formatting 50
partitioning 50
guest disk recommendations, SCO OpenServer 5.0 222
guest hardware, SMP support 43
VMware Server sound adapter 52
VMware Tools
described 41
do not use standard driver in Windows 7 54
drivers for Windows PE 56
installing in Windows Vista 67
ISO file format 41
MS-DOS 6.22 or Windows 3.1x, not available 98
NetWare 5.1 Server, disconnecting ISO file 399
NetWare 6.0 Server, disconnecting ISO file 394
Operating System Specific Packages 42
support for ESXi 4.0 42
Windows 2003 product activation 80
Windows Server 2008, log in as administrator 62
Windows Server 2008, warnings when installing 63
Windows Vista, warnings when installing 68
Windows XP product activation 74

VMware Tools and X server
Mandrake Linux 10 guest 139
Mandrake Linux 10.1 guest 136
Mandrake Linux 8.2 guest 152
Mandrake Linux 9.0 guest 149
Mandrake Linux 9.1 guest 146
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guest 121
Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guest 124
Mandriva Linux 2006 guest 134
Mandriva Linux 2007 guest 130
Mandriva Linux 2008 guest 128
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Workstation 2.1 guest 190
Red Hat Linux 7.0 guest 214
Red Hat Linux 7.1 guest 211
Red Hat Linux 7.2 guest 207
Red Hat Linux 7.3 guest 203
Red Hat Linux 8.0 guest 199
Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest 194
SUSE Linux 7.3 guest 295
SUSE Linux 8.0 guest 292
SUSE Linux 8.1 guest 289
SUSE Linux 8.2 guest 285
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 guest 252
Turbolinux 7.0 guest 309

VMware Tools installation, rebooting ESX Server 2.5.x
Windows 2000 85
Windows NT 88
Windows Server 2003 75
Windows XP 81

VMware Tools, disabling IPv6
Asianux 3.0 guests 100
CentOS 4 guests 107
CentOS 5 guests 104
FreeBSD 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 guests 383
FreeBSD 4.4, 4.5, 4.6.2, 4.8 guests 380
Mandrake Linux 10 guests 140
Mandrake Linux 10.1 guests 137
Mandrake Linux 8.0 or 8.1 guests 156
Mandrake Linux 8.2 guests 153
Mandrake Linux 9.0 guests 150
Mandrake Linux 9.1 guests 147
Mandrake Linux 9.2 guests 143
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guests 122
Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guests 125
Mandriva Linux 2006 guests 134
Mandriva Linux 2007 guests 131
Mandriva Linux 2008 128
Novell Linux Desktop 9 guests 159
Open SUSE Linux 10.2 guests 262
Open SUSE Linux 10.3 guests 259

Open SUSE Linux 11.1 guests 256
Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 guests 162
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 guests 192
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 guests 186
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 guests 177
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 guests 168
Red Hat Linux 6.2 guests 218
Red Hat Linux 7.1 guests 212
Red Hat Linux 7.2 guests 208
Red Hat Linux 7.3 guests 204
Red Hat Linux 7 guests 215
Red Hat Linux 8.0 guests 200
Red Hat Linux 9.0 guests 196
SUSE Linux 10 guests 268
SUSE Linux 10.1 guests 265
SUSE Linux 7.3 guests 296
SUSE Linux 8.0 guests 293
SUSE Linux 8.1 guests 290
SUSE Linux 8.2 guests 286
SUSE Linux 9.0 guests 283
SUSE Linux 9.1 guests 279
SUSE Linux 9.3 guests 271
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 guests 233
SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 guests 229
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 guests 241
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 guests 236
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 guests 253
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 guests 250
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 guests 247
Turbolinux 10 Desktop guests 301
Turbolinux 10 Server guests 299
Turbolinux 7.0 guests 310
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8 guests 304
Turbolinux Workstation 8 guests 307
Ubuntu 5.04 guests 343
Ubuntu 5.10 guests 340
Ubuntu 6.06 guests 337
Ubuntu 6.10 guests 335
Ubuntu 7.04 guests 331
Ubuntu 7.10 guests 327
Ubuntu 8.04 LTS guests 323
Ubuntu 8.10 guests 318
Ubuntu 9.04 guests 313

VMware Tools, enable root to install on
Debian 4.0 112
Debian 5.0 110
Ubuntu 8.04 LTS 323
Ubuntu 8.10 317
Ubuntu 9.04 313
Ubuntu Linux 5.04 343
Ubuntu Linux 5.10 340
Ubuntu Linux 6.06 337
Ubuntu Linux 6.10 334
Ubuntu Linux 7.04 331
Ubuntu Linux 7.10 326
VMware Tools, installing on Linux guests 42
vmware-user process, starting manually for VMware Tools 43
vmxnet3 network adapter link speed
Windows Server 2003 74
Windows XP 79

W
Windows 2000
installing guest operating system 82
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 85
rebooting after VMware Tools installation on ESX Server 2.5.x 85
Service Pack 3 boot failure 85
Windows 3.1x
installing guest operating system 97
installing network adapter 98
resolving mouse problems 98
VMware Tools not available 98
Windows 7
64-bit support 53
installing guest operating system 53
VMware Tools SVGA driver, do not use 54
Windows 95
enabling DMA 95
enabling networking after installation 95
installing driver for Ethernet adapter 94
installing guest operating system 93
phantom COM ports 95
resuming an interrupted installation 94
troubleshooting network problems 95
USB drivers, lack of support 95
Windows 98
booting from floppy disk 91
enabling networking after installation 92
installing guest operating system 91
phantom COM ports 92
USB drivers, lack of support 92
Windows Me
installing guest operating system 89
USB drivers, lack of support 90
Windows NT
enabling DMA 86
enabling networking after installation 87
installing guest operating system 86
memory settings during installation 88
multiple disks, using 87
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 88
rebooting after VMware Tools installation on ESX Server 2.5.x 88
Windows Preinstallation Environment
64-bit support 55
create ISO image for PE 2.1 56
installing guest operating system 55
using VMware Tools drivers 56
Windows Recovery Environment
64-bit support 58
installing guest operating system 58
Windows Server 2003
64-bit R2 on Intel Woodcrest host might crash 75
64-bit support 71
checked build, running 74
clustering service and ESX Server 74
display settings 74
enhanced vmxnet adapter, enabling 73
hibernation 74
installing guest operating system 69
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 75
product activation 74
rebooting after VMware Tools installation on ESX Server 2.5.x 75
vmxnet3 link speed 74
Windows Server 2008
64-bit installation randomly restarts 62
64-bit support 60
installing guest operating system 59
opening VMware Tools 62
Server Core functionality, 64-bit 60, 61
warnings when installing VMware Tools 63
Windows Vista
64-bit support 65
installing guest operating system 64
network adapter 68
VMware Tools installation 67
warnings when installing VMware Tools 68
Windows XP
64-bit support 77
checked build, running 80
data transfer failure through parallel port 80
hibernation 80
installing guest operating system 76
PAE message displayed during installation 80
PAE, disable in ESX Server virtual machines 81
product activation 80
rebooting after VMware Tools installation on ESX Server 2.5.x 81
SCSI driver support 78
vmxnet3 link speed 79
workspaces, switching in Linux guests 43
X
X server fails to start with Debian 4.0 64-bit guest 112
X server, selecting
Mandrake Linux 10 guest 139
Mandrake Linux 10.1 guest 136
Mandrake Linux 8.2 guest 152
Mandrake Linux 9.0 guest 149
Mandrake Linux 9.1 guest 146
Mandriva Corporate Desktop 4 guest 121
Mandriva Corporate Server 4 guest 124
Mandriva Linux 2006 guest 134
Mandriva Linux 2007 guest 130
Mandriva Linux 2008 guest 128
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Workstation 2.1 guest 190
Red Hat Linux 7.0 guest 214
Red Hat Linux 7.1 guest 211
Red Hat Linux 7.2 guest 207
Red Hat Linux 7.3 guest 203
Red Hat Linux 8.0 guest 199
Red Hat Linux 9.0 guest 194
SUSE Linux 7.3 guest 295
SUSE Linux 8.0 guest 292
SUSE Linux 8.1 guest 289
SUSE Linux 8.2 guest 285
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 7 guest 252
Turbolinux 7.0 guest 309
X window system stops working on SCO OpenServer 5.0 224
X windows fails to start, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 188